

# Backup & Recovery<sup>™</sup> 14 Home

User Manual

## *Contents*

Introduction	7
What's New in Backup & Recovery 14	7
Product Components	8
Features Overview	9
Features	9
User Friendly Fault Minimizing Interface	9
Backup Facilities	9
Restore Facilities	10
Copy Facilities	11
Partition/Hard Disk Management Facilities	11
Automatization Facilities	11
Auxiliary Facilities	11
Supported Technologies	12
Supported File Systems	12
Supported Media	13
Getting Started	13
System Requirements	13
Installation	14
First Start	15
Building Recovery Media	16
Booting from the Linux/DOS Recovery Media	16
Startup	16
Boot menu	17
Booting from the WinPE Recovery Media	19
Startup	19
Basic Concepts	21
System and Data Protection	21
File Backup versus Sector Backup	21
Backup Types	22
Backup Storage	24
Adaptive Restore	25
Paragon Hot Processing & Volume Shadow Copy Service	26
Offline versus Online Data Processing	26

Paragon Hot Processing Technology	27
Volume Shadow Copy Service	27
pVHD Support	27
Dynamic Disks	28
GPT versus MBR	28
uEFI Boot Challenges	29
Apple Boot Camp	29
64-bit Support	29
Copy Operations	
Drive Partitioning	
Scheduling	
Windows BitLocker	
Windows Components	
Interface Overview	
General Layout	
Tool Button	33
Ribbon Panel	34
Virtual Operations Bar	
Express Mode Button	34
Disk Map	35
Disk and Partitions List	35
Context-sensitive Menu	36
Properties Panel	
Status Bar	
Settings Overview	
General Options	
Backup Image Options	
General Copy and Backup Options	40
CD/DVD/BD Recording Options	41
Hot Processing Options	42
Run during Backup Options	43
Partitioning Options	44
E-Mail Options	45
Operation Dependency Options	46
Virtual Mode Options	47

File System Conversion Options	47
Copy/Backup Exclude Options	48
File Backup Exclude Options	49
File Backup Include Options	50
Log Files Options	51
FTP Sites Options	52
Viewing Disk Properties	53
Viewing Image Properties	53
Using the Restore Wizard	53
Using the Archive Database	57
Data Backup and Rescue	58
Creating Backup Images	
Restoring System and Data	61
Copy Tasks	66
Cloning Hard Disks	
Cloning Partitions	69
Partition Management	70
Basic Partitioning Operations	70
Advanced Partitioning Operations	74
Changing Partition Attributes	
Hard Disk Management	79
Converting Dynamic MBR to Basic	79
Converting GPT to Basic MBR	80
Converting Basic MBR to GPT	81
Updating MBR	81
Changing Primary Slot	82
Task Scheduling	83
Setting a Timetable	83
Managing Tasks	84
Creating a Scheduled Task	86
Scripting	86
Extra Functionality	88
View Partition/Hard Disk Properties	88
Volume Explorer	
File Transfer Wizard	
Mount Partition	

Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

Mount Archive	93
Test Surface	95
Check File System Integrity	95
Check Archive Integrity	96
Check Recovery Discs	97
Edit/View Sectors	98
Send Log Files	99
View Logs	99
Typical Scenarios	
Backup Scenarios	100
Creating the Backup Capsule	
Backing up a hard disk or partition to the Backup Capsule	102
Backing up a hard disk or partition to external media (CD/DVD)	104
Backing up a hard disk or partition to a network drive	
Backing up files to an FTP/SFTP server	111
Backing up a dual boot Mac to an external USB drive	113
Backing up files to a local mounted/unmounted (without drive letter assigned) partition	116
Creating a differential to a full partition backup	119
Creating a sector increment to pVHD	122
Creating a sector increment to a full partition backup	125
Creating a file increment to a full partition backup	128
Creating an increment to a full file backup	131
Creating a cyclic partition backup	133
Merging a full partition backup with one of its differentials	136
Recovery Scenarios	138
Correcting EFI parameters	138
Correcting BCD (Boot Configuration Data)	139
Fixing Windows startup ability	140
Restoring a hard disk from the bootable Backup Capsule	143
Restoring a system partition from external media (CD/DVD)	146
Restoring a system partition from a network drive	148
Restoring a system partition from a local drive	155
Restoring a dual boot Mac from an external USB drive	158
Restoring a file increment	160
Restoring a file increment to a partition backup	163
Copying of data from the corrupted system disk to another hard disk	165

Burning of data from the corrupted system disk to CD/DVD	
Copying of data from a backup to the corrupted system partition	
Restoring separate files and folders from a backup	
System Migration Scenarios	177
Migrating system to a new HDD (up to 2.2TB in size)	
Making system bootable on different hardware (P2P Adjust OS)	
Extra Scenarios for WinPE	185
Adding specific drivers	
Configuring network	
Saving log files	
How to Work with Bitlocked Volumes	191
In Windows	
In WinPE	
Troubleshooter	195
Glossary	196

## Introduction

Paragon Backup & Recovery<sup>™</sup> 14 Home is a complex disaster recovery solution. By including into this product the brandnew disk imaging technology that allows backing up directly to virtual containers (pVHD, VHD, VMDK), complete support of GPT/uEFI configurations, Windows BitLocker and the latest Windows 8.1, as well as the option to create an advanced WinPE or Linux based recovery environment on CD/DVD, flash, or in an ISO-file, the company has offered all the necessary facilities to build a bullet-proof shield against any disaster.

In this manual you will find the answers to many of the technical questions, which might arise while using the program.



Our company is constantly releasing new versions and updates to its software, that's why images shown in this manual may be different from what you see on your screen.

## What's New in Backup & Recovery 14

- **<u>Complete uEFI support</u>**. Below you can find only new features introduced in this version:
  - A 64-bit Windows OS system configured to the uEFI boot mode can be adjusted to successfully start up on another hard disk during copy/restore accomplished directly under Windows. Previously the uEFI fixup was only available under WinPE;
  - The Linux-based recovery environment supports systems configured to the uEFI boot mode.
- Enhanced backup format. Paragon introduces a pVHD (Paragon Virtual Hard Drive) format a special VHD, optimized for storing backups of virtual and physical machines. It's very efficient in handling incremental chains, data de-duplication and synchronization. pVHD allows obtaining backups that are up to four times smaller than original backup objects. What you get by using pVHD:
  - Incremental imaging works much faster and rock-stable in comparison with the old PBF;
  - Only pVHD images can be used to do immediate virtualization;
  - With the new backup technology, Paragon has also achieved easy support of any virtual containers (VMDK, VHD, etc.).

In the current version the pVHD support has a promotional goal. In future releases pVHD will gradually take the primary role.

- <u>Support of Windows BitLocker</u> to back up, restore or copy volumes encrypted by this security feature.
- **Copy/Restore to dissimilar sector size**. Previously not allowed, now you can for instance copy or restore contents of a 512-byte hard disk to a 4k hard disk with no additional actions from your side.
- New UIM (Universal Image Mounter). Apart from PBF images, Universal Image Mounter enables to mount (assign a drive letter to) pVHD backup images (full and incremental) to browse their contents and retrieve data both, in the program and directly under Windows OS.
- <u>GPT/uEFI compatible Backup Capsule</u>. Paragon's bootable backup capsule is compatible with 64-bit Windows systems resided on GPT volumes. If having to do with this type of configuration, by selecting one additional option in the Manage Backup Capsule Wizard, you can build a WinPE-based bootable backup capsule to successfully start up PC from it in case of emergency. To accomplish this action, you will need to provide a path

to an .ISO image of the WinPE recovery environment, which can be prepared either with Paragon's Recovery Media Builder or Boot Media Builder.

- Uplifted Recovery Media Builder. Paragon's Recovery Media Builder, a simple alternative to Boot Media Builder, can help you prepare either Linux or WinPE-based bootable environment on a USB thumb drive or in an ISO file (previously only creation of WinPE images on USB was supported). Unlike Boot Media Builder, it doesn't require to have Windows Assessment and Deployment Kit (ADK) or Automated Installation Kit (WAIK) installed in the system. However, it can only be used under Windows 7 or higher, and its functionality is rather limited.
- **Complete support of Windows Storage Spaces**. Windows 8 has come with a storage management feature called the storage spaces. It enables to easily manage large storage pools. In fact it's an expandable virtual container of defined data size, allowing users to add it as many physical drives as they want until the defined virtual disk's limit is reached. This makes it easy to include additional storage devices without having to set up and manage each attached physical storage drive.
- Uplifted Linux Recovery Environment. Started from HDM 14 the Linux-based recovery environment is based on SuSe 12.3 (more hardware devices supported) and includes:
  - P2P Adjust OS Wizard to successfully migrate a Windows physical system to a different hardware platform (P2P);
  - uEFI fixup to clone, restore, migrate 64-bit Windows systems configured to the uEFI boot mode.
- Separate x86 and x64 installation packages. Please note that started from HDM 14 installation packages do not include Recovery Media Builder, thus customers can build Linux or WinPE-based recovery media only through special utilities (Recovery Media Builder or Boot Media Builder) obtained from Paragon's website.
- Windows 8.1 support. Our product has been tested to work fine on Windows 8.1 RTM.
- <u>New user-friendly interface</u> that is fully compatible with the Windows 8 streamlined, tile-oriented interface:
  - Metro-style Express Launcher;
  - Ribbon-based full scale launcher.

GUI of the Linux recovery environment has also been uplifted.

## **Product Components**

In order to cope with different tasks, the product contains several components:

- <u>Windows based set of utilities</u> is the crucial part of the product. With the help of an easy to use launcher you may find and run tasks of any complexity in the field of data and system protection, hard disk partitioning and cloning, etc.
- Linux/DOS based recovery environment is a multi-platform bootable media that enables to run utilities under Linux or PTS DOS, and that way to get access to your hard disk for maintenance or recovery purposes. Both platforms have their strong sides, for instance Linux can boast support of FireWire (i.e. IEEE1394) or USB devices. It enables to burn CD/DVD discs. However there can be some difficulties with detecting new hardware. DOS in its turn has no problems of that kind but is limited in features. The Linux/DOS recovery environment requires no installation and can be of great help when the system fails to boot. Besides it offers a Windows XP like environment.
- <u>WinPE based recovery environment</u>. Especially for keen followers of Windows, our product offers the option to prepare a WinPE based bootable media. Unlike the Linux/DOS recovery environment it can boast an excellent

hardware support and the same interface as the Windows version can. However its system requirements are much tougher.

## **Features Overview**

This chapter dwells upon key benefits and technical highlights of the product.

#### **Features**

Let us list some of the features:

#### **User Friendly Fault Minimizing Interface**

- Graphical representation of the data to gain a better understanding.
- <u>A handy Launcher</u> to easily find and run the required tasks.
- Comprehensive wizards to simplify even the most complex operations.
- A context sensitive hint system for all functions of the program.
- Previewing the resulting layout of hard disks before actually executing operations (so-called virtual operations).

#### **Backup Facilities**

• Archive Database to help the user easily manage backup images (get properties, add, delete, mount, etc.).



This feature is only available for the Windows installation of the program.

#### Available location for backup images:

- Backup to local mounted partitions.
- Backup to local unmounted (without drive letter assigned) partitions.

- *Backup to an external mounted storage* to provide for a higher level of data protection and system independence.

- Backup to a special secured place on the hard disk called the Backup Capsule that has an independent system layout (e.g. a separate partition) and will stay operable should the active file system be damaged. To avoid an accidental removing or unauthorized access of the backup data, this partition is hidden and thus cannot be mounted in the operating system.

- *Backup to external media (CD/DVD)* to guarantee a high level of data protection as long as the backup media is kept secure.

- Backup to a network drive to stand a better chance of success in case of a hard disk failure.
- Backup to an FTP/SFTP server to provide a new level of system and data protection.
- <u>Bootable Backup Capsule</u> to get the choice to launch the Linux or PTS DOS recovery environment every time you start up the computer. With its help you will be able to run utilities under Linux or PTS DOS, and that way to get access to your hard disk for maintenance or recovery purposes.

#### For PBF images:

- <u>Smart Backup Wizard</u> to secure system and data with the minimal efforts possible. With a unique intelligent work algorithm and a highly intuitive user interface, you can easily back up exactly what you need the whole system, e-mail databases (MS Outlook, Express, Windows Mail) media files or office documents of the My Documents folder, or any other files and folders.
- <u>Differential backup</u> to a sector image to only archive changes since the last full sector-based image, thus considerably saving the backup storage space. To restore this kind of backup you will require a full image and one of its differentials.
- Incremental backup to a sector image is a further way of optimizing the process of disk imaging. Unlike
  differentials, it may not only contain data changed since the time of creating a full sector-based archive, but one
  of its increments as well, thus allowing to save more time and the backup storage. Introduction of a special
  index file that stores backup meta-information minimizes time and resources to create this type of archives.
- Incremental backup to a file image to only archive changes since the last full or incremental file-based image. An incremental image is smaller and takes less time to create, but you will require the initial full image and all of its increments to restore the latest point of this kind of backup.
- File backup to a sector image. It is a unique technology on the market so far that bridges two principally different approaches of the data backup: the file-based backup and the disk imaging backup. With its help you can now create a sector-based backup of your system to get it back on track in minutes in case of a virus attack or a hardware malfunction and then just make file-based incremental images to the previously created sector-based backup to keep updated only information that is critical for you. Thus you will considerably save your system resources.
- <u>Cyclic backup</u> to automate the backup of separate partitions. It is an ideal option if you want to establish a selfacting data protection system.

#### This feature is only available for the Windows installation of the program.

• <u>Synthetic backup</u> to change any property (merge a given differential image with its full image, split/un-split, compress/de-compress, etc.) of an existing backup image without carrying out a physical backup operation.

#### For pVHD images:

- Backup to VD Wizard to protect separate partitions or entire hard disks.
- Incremental Backup to VD Wizard to create incremental backup chains based on the base pVHD image.

#### **Restore Facilities**

- **Restore an entire disk, separate partitions or only files you need** from the previously created backup image (for PBF and pVHD).
- **Restore with Shrink** to restore a backup image to a free block of smaller size taking into account only the amount of actual data of the image.
- <u>Adaptive Restore</u> to successfully migrate a Windows physical system to a different hardware platform (P2P) by allowing automatic injection of all required drivers and the other actions crucial for a migration of this kind.



This feature is only available for the bootable recovery environment.

#### **Copy Facilities**

• <u>Partition/hard disk copy</u> to successfully transfer all on-disk information including standard bootstrap code and other system service structures, thus maintaining the operating system's working capability.



Copy functionality can also be used as an alternative way of data protection.

#### Partition/Hard Disk Management Facilities

- <u>Basic functions for initializing, partitioning and formatting hard disks</u> (create, format, delete). Instead of the standard Windows disk tools, the program supports all popular file systems.
- Mount a partition (assign a drive letter) of any file system type to make it available for your operating system.
- Modify file system parameters (make active/inactive, hide/unhide, etc.).
- <u>Undelete Partitions Wizard</u> to recover an accidentally deleted partition.

#### **Automatization Facilities**

• <u>Task scheduling</u> to automate routine operations. It can be particularly effective when you have to repeat a sequence of actions on a regular basis.



Scheduling is only available for the Windows installation of the program.

<u>Scripting</u> to make the program create a script of any set of operations you need. Besides support of all
operations available in the interactive mode, the unattended mode provides some additional features, such as
conditional execution, subroutines, repeatable iterations, disk/partition properties analysis, errors
management, etc.

#### **Auxiliary Facilities**

- <u>Conversion of basic MBR disks to basic GPT</u> to enjoy all benefits of the newest partitioning scheme with minimal effort.
- <u>File Transfer Wizard</u> to make such operations as transferring of files/directories or burning of them to CD/DVD as easy and convenient as possible. Providing access to Paragon backups as regular folders, it may also help to replace corrupted data from a previously created image in case of an operating system failure.
- <u>Volume Explorer</u> is a handy tool when you have different file systems on the disk, whether they contain an operating system or just data. Volume Explorer will let you explore a file system of any type and provide access to the necessary files and directories regardless of their security attributes.
- <u>Network Configuration Wizard</u> to establish a network connection on a bootable recovery media either to save a backup of a partition/hard disk or just several files on a network computer or retrieve a previously made backup from a network computer for recovery purposes.

• <u>Boot Corrector</u> to fix most of the system boot problems that can be a result of a human factor, program error or a boot virus activity.



Boot Corrector is only available for the bootable recovery environment.

## **Supported Technologies**

Along with using innovative technologies from outside, Paragon has developed a number of its own original technologies that make its products unique and attractive for customers:

- **Paragon Hot Backup™** technology to back up locked partitions and hard disks under Windows NT+ family operating systems providing both high operating efficiency as well as low hardware requirements.
- **Paragon Hot Copy™** technology to copy locked partitions and hard disks under Windows NT+ family operating systems providing both high operating efficiency as well as low hardware requirements.
- **Paragon Adaptive Restore™** technology to successfully migrate a Windows physical system to a different hardware platform (P2P).
- **Paragon Power Shield™** technology to provide data consistency in case of a hardware malfunction, power outages or an operating system failure.
- **Paragon UFSD™** technology to browse partitions of any file system including hidden and unmounted, modify and copy files and folders, etc.
- Paragon Restore with Shrink<sup>™</sup> technology to restore a backup image to a free block of smaller size taking into account only the amount of actual data of the image.
- **Paragon BTE™** technology to set tasks for execution during the system restart, thus saving from the need to use a bootable media when modifying system partitions.
- Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service (VSS) to provide the copy/backup infrastructure for the Microsoft Windows XP/Vista/7/Server 2003/2008 operating systems. It offers a reliable mechanism to create consistent point-in-time copies of data known as shadow copies. Developed by Microsoft in close cooperation with the leading copy/backup solution vendors on the market, it is based on a snapshot technology concept.
- **Microsoft Dynamic Disk** (simple, spanned, striped, mirrored, RAID-5) to offer more management flexibility without the partition limitation of basic disks. Dynamic storage can be particularly beneficial for large-scale businesses when dealing with many physical hard disks involving complex setup.
- **GUID Partition Table** (GPT). It is the next generation of a hard disk partitioning scheme developed to lift restrictions of the old MBR. GPT disks are now supported by Windows Vista/7, Server 2008, Mac OS X and Linux.

## **Supported File Systems**

- Full read/write access to FAT16/FAT32 partitions.
- Full read/write access to NTFS (Basic Disks) under Windows, Linux and PTS DOS. Compressed NTFS files are also supported.
- Full read/write access to Ext2FS/Ext3FS/Ext4FS partitions.
- Limited read/write access to Apple HFS+ partitions.

0

Unfortunately, support of non-Roman characters for the HFS+ file system is unavailable at the moment. The company is about to implement it in the nearest future.

13

## **Supported Media**

- Support of both MBR and GPT hard disks (2.2TB+ disks included)
- IDE, SCSI and SATA hard disks
- SSD (Solid State Drive)
- AFD (Advanced Format Drive)
- Non-512B sector size drives
- CD-R, CD-RW, DVD-R, DVD+R, DVD-RW, DVD+RW, DVD-R, DVD+R double layer and also Blu-ray discs
- FireWire (i.e. IEEE1394), USB 1.0, USB 2.0, USB 3.0 hard disks
- PC card storage devices (MBR and GPT flash memory, etc.)

## **Getting Started**

In this chapter you will find all the information necessary to get the product ready to use.

### **System Requirements**

#### For the Windows installation package

- Windows XP SP3
- Windows Vista
- Windows 7
- Windows 8
- Windows 8.1

Additional requirements:

 To install and run the product the target OS should have Visual Studio C++ 2010 Runtime Library installed (comes with the installation package – you will be prompted to install it, if it's not been found in the system).

#### During the installation additional free space (up to 1GB) will be required.

#### For the Linux bootable environment

- Intel Pentium CPU or its equivalent, with 300 MHz processor clock speed
- 256 MB of RAM
- SVGA video adapter and monitor
- Keyboard
- Mouse

#### For the WinPE bootable environment

- Intel Pentium III CPU or its equivalent, with 1000 MHz processor clock speed
- At least 1 GB of RAM
- SVGA video adapter and monitor
- Keyboard
- Mouse

#### **Additional requirements**

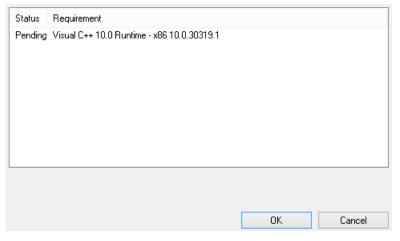
- Network card to send/retrieve data to/from a network computer
- Recordable CD/DVD drive to burn data to compact discs
- External USB hard drive to store data.

#### **Installation**

Before the installation, please make sure the <u>systems requirements</u> are met. If everything is OK, please do the following to install the product:

In case there is some previous version of the program installed on the computer, the program will offer the user to uninstall it first.

 Click on the supplied setup file to initiate the installation. First your system will be checked for the presence of Visual Studio C++ 2010 Runtime Library and if not found, you will be prompted to install it (comes with the installation package). Click Install to continue.



- 2. The Welcome page will inform that the application is being installed. Click Next to continue.
- 3. Please Read Paragon License Agreement carefully and then select the appropriate option to accept. Otherwise you won't be able to proceed with the installation. By clicking the **Print** button, the license agreement may also be printed out.
- 4. Provide your product key and serial number.
- 5. On the Customer Information page you are to provide the standard customer information, i.e. a user name and an organization. Besides you need to decide whether to make the program available for all users of this computer (if several) or only for the current one.

 On the next page, click Change to install the utility to a different location (by default C:\Program Files\Paragon Software\Paragon Backup & Recovery 14 Home Edition\). Otherwise click Next to continue.

0

Do not install the program on network drives. Do not use Terminal Server sessions to install and run the program. In both cases, the program functionality will be limited.

- 7. On the Ready to Install the Program page click **Install** to start the installation or **Back** to return to any of the previous pages and modify the installation settings.
- 8. The Final page reports the end of the setup process. Click **Finish** to complete the wizard.

## **First Start**

To start Paragon Backup & Recovery 14 under Windows, please click the Windows Start button and then select **Programs > Paragon Backup & Recovery™ 14 > Paragon Backup & Recovery™**.



The program provides wide opportunities in the field of hard disk structure modification, so just to be on the safe side, please make a backup of your data before carrying out any operation.

The first component that will be displayed is called the Express Launcher. Thanks to a well thought-out categorization and hint system, it provides quick and easy access to wizards and utilities that we consider worth using on a regular basis. With its help you can also start up the traditional launcher, the help system or go to the program's home page.



To know more on how to handle the product's interface and accomplish typical operations, please consult the <u>Windows Components</u> chapter.

## **Building Recovery Media**

WinPE- and/or Linux-based recovery environments should be prepared on-site with Paragon's Recovery Media Builder or Boot Media Builder, which you can download from Paragon's web site, the My Account section (<u>www.paragon-software.com/my-account/</u>). To know more on the subject, please consult documentation that comes with these utilities.

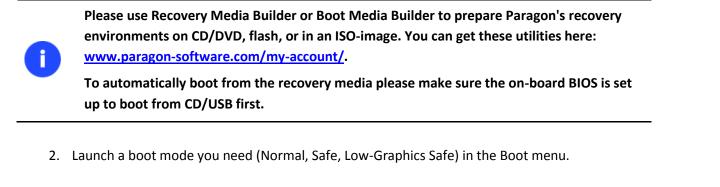
## **Booting from the Linux/DOS Recovery Media**

The Linux/DOS recovery environment can be used to boot your computer into Linux or PTS DOS to get access to your hard disk for maintenance or recovery purposes. It also has the PTS DOS safe mode, which may help in a number of non-standard situations such as interfering hardware settings or serious problems on the hardware level. In this case, only basic files and drivers (such as hard disk drivers, a monitor driver, and a keyboard driver) will be loaded.

#### Startup

To start working with the Linux/DOS recovery environment, please take the following steps:

1. Start up the computer from our Linux/DOS recovery media.



By default the Normal Mode will be automatically initiated after a 10 second idle period.

- 3. Click on the required operation to start. Hints on the selected at the moment item will help you make the right choice.
- 4. Consult the help system by pressing **ALT+F1** to know more on the subject.

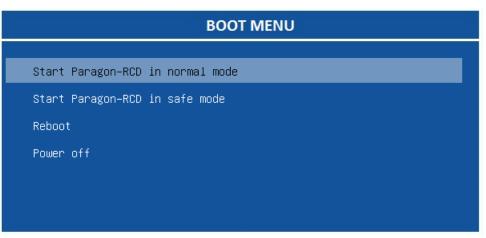
#### **Boot menu**

#### 32-bit environment



- Normal Mode. Boot into the Linux normal mode. This mode uses the full set of drivers (recommended);
- **Safe Mode**. Boot into the PTS DOS mode. This mode can be used as an alternative of the Linux normal mode if it fails to work properly;
- Low-Graphics Safe Mode. Boot into the PTS DOS safe mode. In this case, only the minimal set of drivers will be included, like hard disk, monitor, and keyboard drivers. This mode has simple graphics and a simple menu;
- Floppy Disk. Reboot the computer from a system floppy disk;
- Hard Disk 0. Boot from the primary hard disk;
- Find OS(s) on your hard disks. The program will scan hard disks of your computer to find any bootable operating system.

#### 64-bit environment



- Normal Mode. Boot into the Linux normal mode. This mode uses the full set of drivers (recommended);
- Safe Mode. Boot into the PTS DOS mode. This mode can be used as an alternative of the Linux normal mode if it fails to work properly;
- **Reboot**. Restart the computer.
- **Power off**. Shut down the computer.

While working with the recovery environment you might experience some inconvenience caused by possible video artifacts. It is just a result of changing video modes and in no way will affect the program functionality. If this is the case, please wait a bit and everything will be OK.

#### Normal Mode

When the Normal mode is selected, the Linux launch menu appears:

<b>Q</b> I	Paragon Backup and Recovery		^	You can copy an entire hard disk or its partitions to new locations.
<b>Q</b>	Backup Wizard			You can also save them as image files for later restoration.
1	Simple Restore Wizard			
5	File Transfer Wizard			Please select the drive, its partition if necessary, and then activate the 'Hard Disk' or 'Partition' pull-down
	Boot Corrector			menu and select the operation needed.
H.	Network Configurator			
0	Log Saver			
É	Eject CD/DVD			
<b>C</b> :\	Start the command line			
	Reboot the computer			
$\square$	D#		¥	
<		>		

• **Backup & Recovery** (enables to run wizards and dialogs, to specify program settings, to visualize the operating environment and the hard disk configuration);

- Backup Wizard (enables to back up hard disk and partitions);
- Simple Restore Wizard (allows restoring hard disks and partitions);
- File Transfer Wizard (allows coping files/folders to another disk or a partition as well as recording them to CD/DVD);
- Boot Corrector (helps to correct the Windows System Registry without Windows being loaded);
- Network Configurator (enables to establish a network connection under Linux);

If you are going to use network resources, first launch the Network Configuration Wizard to establish a network connection.

- Log Saver (helps to collect and send the necessary log files to the Technical Support);
- Eject CD/DVD;
- Command Line (allows experienced users to execute any operation);
- Reboot the computer;
- Power off the computer.

To move within the menu, please use the arrow keys of the computer keyboard.

#### Safe Mode

When the Safe mode is selected, the PTS DOS launch menu appears. It has nearly the same functionality as for the Normal mode except for the **Network Configurator** and **Log Saver** commands. Besides due to certain limitations of the PTS DOS environment, there is no possibility to burn CD/DVD discs.

#### Low Graphics Safe Mode

When the Low Graphics mode is selected, the PTS DOS launch menu appears. It has the same functionality and looks similar to the Safe mode but graphically simpler.

🥐 Backup & Recovery 14	You can create, delete and
🧒 Backup Wizard	format hard disk partitions
零 Simple Restore Wizard	using this program, which
<u> F</u> ile Transfer Wizard	will start now.
🔚 Boot Corrector	Upon the start, please
	select the drive and one of
🗾 Start the command line	its partitions or its free
🧶 Reboot the computer	space. Then activate the
	'Partition' pull-down menu
	and select one of the
	partitioning operations.

#### **Booting from the WinPE Recovery Media**

The WinPE recovery environment can be a real alternative to the Linux/DOS recovery environment. Providing nearly the same level of functionality it offers an excellent hardware support and the same interface as the Windows version does.

#### **Startup**

To start working with the WinPE recovery environment, please take the following steps:

1. Start up the computer from the WinPE recovery media.



Please use Boot Media Builder to prepare the WinPE recovery environment, which you can get here: <u>www.paragon-software.com/my-account/</u>.

To automatically boot from the recovery media please make sure the on-board BIOS is set up to boot from CD/USB first.

2. Once it has been loaded, you will see the Universal Application Launcher. In general it enables to run components of the product, load drivers for undefined hardware or establish a network connection.



- 3. Click on the required operation to start. Hints on the selected at the moment item will help you make the right choice.
- 4. Consult the help system by pressing **ALT+F1** to know more on the subject.



The WinPE based recovery environment offers excellent hardware support. However in case it doesn't have a driver for your disk controller, your hard disks will be unavailable. Please consult the <u>Adding specific drivers</u> scenario to know how to tackle this issue.

## **Basic Concepts**

This chapter explains terms and ideas that show how the program works. To understand these helps to obtain a general notion of the operation performance and makes it easier for the user to operate the program.

## **System and Data Protection**

The data protection issue is a growing cause of worrying for more and more people today. Indeed, it is hardly to find a person who will be particularly happy when all precious information on the hard disk is irreversible lost as a result of its malfunction. So how this tragedy can be prevented?

#### File Backup versus Sector Backup

Since the advent of the computer age people were in the search of ways to guarantee data safety. As a result we've got now two principal approaches: the file-based backup and the sector-based backup. The main difference between the two lies in the way data is treated.

A sector-based backup operates with an image (or a snapshot) of the whole disk system or its separate partitions. It not only includes the contents of all user-made files, but additionally contains the exact structure of directories, information about file allocation, file attributes and other related data. Thus it enables to successfully process system or encrypted partitions of any file system type, no matter what kind of information they contain.

In contrast, a file-based backup takes into account a file system structure and only functions on a file or folder level. So it is very efficient when archiving separate files or folders, but in no way will help you back up a system partition.

You should understand pretty well that each of the two approaches is only good when properly chosen. In the comparison table below you can see when this or that approach will suit you at most.

Sector-Based Backup	File-Based Backup					
Merits						
It does not dependent on a particular file system. Thus it can successfully process system or encrypted partitions of any file system type, no matter what kind of information they contain.	Functioning on a file/folder level, it is ideal for archiving separate files or folders.					
It can create an exact image of a partition, including its service data. Thus it is ideal for a backup/restore of a system partition or a fast deployment to a bunch of identical computers.	It enables to automatically build up contents of the future backup image by using an advanced system of filters.					
	It allows archiving data of the same volume with different backup policies.					
	It is easy and efficient when creating backup chains.					
Demerits						
Resulted backup images may contain a lot of redundant data.	It depends on a file system structure, so you won't be able to process unknown file systems.					
It is ineffective when trying to maintain a backup chain, especially when little amount of data is	It cannot be used to back up a system partition.					

Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

## being changed. It is much slower when processing large amount of data.

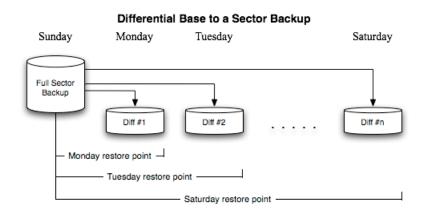
#### **Backup Types**

At the present moment the market is offering various types of backup imaging to meet the needs of any user. Besides supporting them all, our program offers a unique backup type, called File Increment to a Sector Backup.

#### Full, Differential, and Incremental Sector Backups

A full sector-based backup image includes all contents of a partition or a hard disk at the moment of its creation. If you roll back your system to the initial state on a regular basis, that's exactly what you're looking for. But if you want to have multiple backup archives of the same partition reflecting certain time stamps, unchanged data will inevitable be duplicated in all archives and take additional space on backup media. To tackle this issue there has been developed a supplementary technique called Differential Sector Backup.

A differential archive only contains data changed since the time of creating a full archive, which forms a base (or a parental image) in this case, thus considerably saving your system resources. It is realized by the exact bit-wise comparison of the previous partition's data (saved in the parental image) with the current data (that is actually the partition itself). To restore this kind of backup you will require a full image and one of its differentials, what is very convenient.



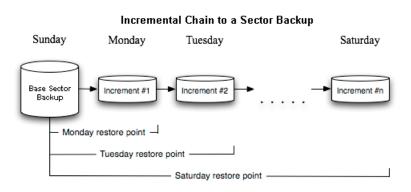
Ø

This function is only available for single primary and logical partitions.

Incremental archive is a further way of optimizing the process of disk imaging. Unlike differentials, it may not only contain data changed since the time of creating a full sector-based archive, but one of its increments as well, thus allowing to save more time and the backup storage. The main principal here is the shorter the interval between increments, the less data is backed up. In general this type of backup is great except for one thing – when you restore an incremental archive there will be processed the initial full image and all increments between, which depending on the size of your backup chain, may take plenty of time. Anyway unlike backups, the restore operation is an emergency, which might not happen at all.

Paragon's incremental sector-based archive employs an innovative technology that significantly improves the backup performance. Its core is in introduction of a special index file (.pfi) that keeps meta-information on the corresponding incremental image. It's much smaller than the image itself and is used to calculate the difference between the current and previous state of a backup object. Thus, when you're going to do an increment to a full archive of your system

partition stored on the network, only its index file is processed over the net (a couple of megabytes at most), not the entire image, which minimizes both, the network traffic and backup time. Another new thing is change of a backup format – all increments are saved in .vhd (Virtual Hard Drive) containers.



Please note that the current version of the product has a number of limitations regarding sector-based increments:

- Increments can only be created for full archives of the new type (with a .pfi index file). Any of our flagship products since Hard Disk Manager 12 supports this functionality;
- Increments can only be created for full archives stored on a local mounted drive or a network share;
- Increments cannot be created for archives of entire GPT disks;
- Increments can only be restored under Windows (if no restart is needed) or WinPE;
- Increments cannot be processed with the Synthetic Backup Wizard;
- Increments cannot be processed with the Check Archive Integrity Wizard;
- Increments cannot be processed with the Create File Complement Wizard;
- Increments cannot be browsed in Volume Explorer;
- Increments can only be used with our software;
- Increments cannot be compressed;
- Increments cannot be encrypted;
- Increments cannot be splitted.

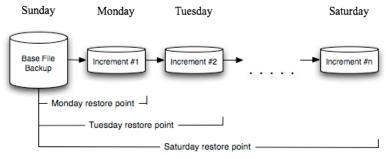
#### Full and Incremental File Backups

A full file-based archive only contains files and folders. It is really efficient when backing up an e-mail database or particular documents, as no redundant data is processed. But if you care about maintaining a files history, you can benefit from one more supplementary technique called Incremental File Backup.

An incremental archive only contains data changed since the time of creating a full or incremental file-based archive. It is smaller and takes less time to create, but you will require the initial full image and all of its increments to restore the latest point of this kind of backup.

24

#### Incremental Chain to a File Backup



#### File Increment to a Sector Backup

File Increment to a Sector Backup is a unique technology on the market so far that bridges two principally different approaches of the data backup: the file-based backup and the sector-based backup. With its help you can now create a sector-based backup of your system to get it back on track in minutes in case of a virus attack or a hardware malfunction and then just make file-based incremental images to the previously created sector-based backup to keep updated only information that is critical for you. Thus you will considerably save your system resources.

#### **Backup Storage**

Our program supports several techniques of storing backup images. Let's take a closer look at them all to understand what kind of storage is able to provide better security:

- You can place a backup image to a local partition. Despite the fact that it is the most convenient way, try not to use it. You can delete your backup just by accident or lose it as a result of a hardware malfunction, or a virus attack;
- You can place a backup image to an external mounted storage to provide for a higher level of data protection and system independence;
- You can place a backup image to a special secured place on the hard disk called the Backup Capsule that has an independent system layout (e.g. a separate partition) and will stay operable should the active file system be damaged. To avoid an accidental removing or unauthorized access of the backup data, this partition is hidden and thus cannot be mounted in the operating system. However it won't help you in case of a hardware malfunction;
- You can place a backup image to external media (CD/DVD) to guarantee a high level of data protection as long as the backup media is kept secure;
- You can place a backup image to a network drive to stand a better chance of success in case of a hard disk failure. Moreover, by storing it on a special-purpose server you may be pretty sure nothing will happen to it;
- Finally you can place a backup image to an FTP server to provide a new level of system and data protection.

#### Known Issues on FTP/SFTP

- 1. You need to check out yourself Windows Firewall or programs of this kind let our program work with the required port (21 by default).
- 2. You cannot restore data selectively (with Restore Wizard) from an FTP/SFTP server.
- 3. You can browse an FTP server in the passive mode only.
- 4. Parallel access to several FTP/SFTP servers is limited only one password for all servers is available.

#### **Adaptive Restore**

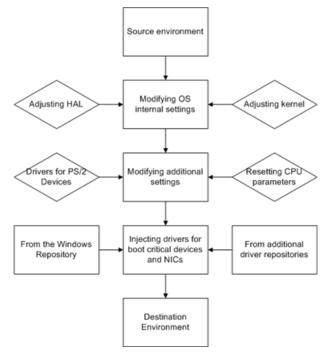
#### Technology Background

Windows family operating systems are notorious for their excessive sensibility to hardware, especially when it turns to replacement of such a crucial device as HDD controller or motherboard – actually Windows will most likely fail to boot as a result of this operation.

In 2008 our company came with an exclusive technology called Paragon Adaptive Restore<sup>™</sup>. Initially aimed at restore of Windows Vista or Server 2008 from a backup to a different hardware configuration, its current realization, available in the P2P Adjust OS Wizard, enables to make any Windows OS since XP bootable on dissimilar hardware by allowing automatic injection of all required drivers and the other actions crucial for this type of migration.

#### **Technology Concept**

Let's take a closer look at how Paragon Adaptive Restore works.



As you see, successful migration of a Windows system to a different hardware platform involves several actions:

- 1. Change of the Windows kernel settings according to the new configuration. The program detects the given hardware profile and automatically installs the appropriate Windows HAL and kernel.
- 2. Installation of drivers for boot critical devices. The program detects those without drivers and automatically tries to install lacking drivers from the built-in Windows repository. If there's no driver in the repository, it prompts the user to set a path to an additional driver repository, strongly recommending not to proceed until all drivers for the found boot critical devices are installed. In case drivers for these devices are installed, but disabled, they will be enabled.
- 3. Installation of drivers for a PS/2 mouse and keyboard. This action will only be accomplished for Windows XP/Server 2003.
- 4. **Installation of drivers for network cards**. The program detects those without drivers and automatically tries to install lacking drivers from the built-in Windows repository. If there's no driver in the repository, it prompts the user to set a path to an additional driver repository.

These actions guarantee a Windows system will start up on dissimilar hardware. After the startup, Windows will initiate reconfiguration of all Plug'n'Play devices. It's a standard procedure, so please don't worry and prepare the latest drivers at this step to get the most out of the system.

0

Though all Windows systems have built-in driver repositories, please be prepared to have additional drivers when dealing with Windows XP/Server 2003, because for these systems they are very modest.

#### **Technology Application**

Let's consider a number of situations when the Adaptive Restore technology can help you out:

- If you need to migrate to a different hardware platform with minimal effort
- If you need to upgrade hardware while keeping all programs and settings intact
- If you need to replace failed hardware and cannot find an exact match for original system specifications

#### **Known Issues**

- 1. After transferring Microsoft Vista and later versions to different hardware, you will need to re-activate license of the system. It's normal behavior as these systems keep tracking any change of hardware. Re-activation is legally justified in this case, as you transfer your system to another PC.
- 2. If you've installed several operating systems on one partition, we can only add drivers to the latest version of OS. Microsoft highly recommends that you install an operating system on a separate partition.
- 3. Please note drivers are not cached during selection. That's why if you select a driver to add to the system, but it's already unavailable during the operation, the program will end the operation with an error.

## Paragon Hot Processing & Volume Shadow Copy Service

#### **Offline versus Online Data Processing**

In the course of time there have been developed various methods of data processing. Despite different work concept, all of them can be divided into two principal groups: offline (cold) and online (hot) data processing techniques.

As the name infers, offline data processing can only be accomplished when the data is in consistent state (the operating system and all the applications are completely shut down). Actually it is the most preferable way of image creation or data cloning, since software can obtain an exclusive right to process data that guaranties high level of operating efficiency. However, the offline data processing is absolutely out of question when dealing with 24/7 production environments.

In contrast, online data processing enables to create a consistent snapshot even as the data is currently modified. It is particularly useful for systems with high availability requirements, but it won't be accomplished until all active transactions are complete. The point is to provide a coherent state of all open files and databases involved in a process, taking into account that applications may still keep writing to disks. As a result an online data processing cannot boast high operating speed.

Our program supports both offline and online methods of data processing. As far as online method is concerned it offers its own hot processing algorithm together with the possibility to use snapshot technologies provided by the Microsoft VSS framework.

#### Paragon Hot Processing Technology

Paragon Hot Processing is an online copy/backup technology for Windows NT+ family operating systems. Developed back in 2001, nowadays it is integrated with all copy/backup solutions offered by the company.

Paragon Hot Processing is not exactly a snapshot technology, though it has much in common with it. During an online copy/backup, the program uses the kernel mode driver HOTCORE.SYS to intercept and control disk write activity of applications and the operating system. The hotcore driver as an integral part of the program is installed during the setup procedure (that's why the system reboot is required to complete the setup procedure). For the most part the driver is in the idle mode until it is activated with the program. While in this mode it bypasses any calls having no effect on the overall system performance, but a few kilobytes of the system memory.

Paragon Hot Processing technology offers copy/backup of locked partitions and hard disks under Windows NT+ family operating systems providing both high operating efficiency as well as low hardware requirements.



It is not recommended to use Paragon Hot Processing with active SQL Server, Exchange or Oracle databases since the backup image contents may be corrupted.

#### **Volume Shadow Copy Service**

Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service (VSS) is designed to provide the copy/backup infrastructure for the Microsoft Windows XP/Vista/Server 2003/2008 operating systems. It offers a reliable mechanism to create consistent point-in-time copies of data known as shadow copies. Developed by Microsoft in close cooperation with the leading copy/backup solution vendors on the market, it is based on a snapshot technology concept.

Initiated by a VSS aware copy/backup utility, VSS creates snapshots for the selected volumes and represents them as virtual read-only devices, called volume shadow copies. Once the shadow copies are created, the copy/backup utility starts processing the data while applications keep writing to original volumes.

Unlike Paragon Hot Processing the VSS technology provides a unique possibility to make a synchronous snapshot of multiple volumes. This very feature can be particularly beneficial when backing up active SQL Server 2003, Exchange 2003 or Oracle databases located on multiple volumes the way it is recommended by Microsoft to improve the level of database performance and reliability, thus providing 100-percent data consistency.



To use VSS it is necessary to have a mounted 300 MB+ NTFS partition.

#### **pVHD Support**

Paragon introduces a pVHD (Paragon Virtual Hard Drive) format – a special VHD, optimized for storing backups of virtual and physical machines. It's very efficient in handling incremental chains, data de-duplication and synchronization. pVHD allows obtaining backups that are up to four times smaller than original backup objects.

In the current version of the product backup images can be made either in the old PBF or the new pVHD. Please note that the pVHD support has a promotional goal. In future releases pVHD will gradually take the primary role.

Below is the list of wizards that allow working with pVHD:

- Backup to VD Wizard (Linux, Windows, WinPE);
- Incremental Backup to VD Wizard (Linux, Windows, WinPE);

• <u>Restore from VD Wizard</u> (Linux, Windows, WinPE).

What you get by using pVHD:

- Incremental imaging works much faster and rock-stable in comparison with the old PBF;
- Only pVHD images can be used to do immediate virtualization;
- With the new backup technology, available for customers as a new backup image format pVHD, Paragon has also achieved easy support of any virtual containers (VMDK, VHD, etc.).

## **Dynamic Disks**

As you probably know, MS-DOS, Microsoft Windows 95/98/Me/NT/2000/XP/Vista/Server 2003/2008 support four primary partitions per physical hard disk, one of which can be extended. Certainly there is the possibility to create logical drives within the extended partition. Such types of disks are called basic. Windows XP Professional, Windows 2000, Windows Vista and Windows Server 2003/2008 follow the same strategy: You can have a maximum of four primary partitions, one of which can be an extended partition with logical drives. However, these operating systems also introduce a new disk configuration type - dynamic disk - which must be understood to effectively configure and manage hard disks.

Dynamic disk is a physical disk that doesn't use partitions or logical drives. Instead, it contains only dynamic volumes. Regardless of what format you use for the file system, only Win2K computers can access dynamic volumes directly. However, computers that aren't running Win2K can access the dynamic volumes remotely when connected to the shared folders over the network.

Dynamic disks can co-exist on a system with basic disks. The only limitation is that you cannot mix Basic and Dynamic disks on the same hard drive.

There are five types of dynamic volumes: simple (uses free space from a single disk), spanned (created from free disk space that is linked together from multiple disks), striped (a volume the data of which is interleaved across two or more physical disks), mirrored (a fault-tolerant volume the data of which is duplicated on two physical disks, and RAID-5 volumes (a fault-tolerant volume the data of which is striped across an array of three or more disks).

With dynamic storage, you can perform disk and volume management without the need to restart Windows.

#### Limitations:

- Dynamic disks are not supported on portable computers.
- Dynamic disks are not supported on Windows XP Home Edition-based computers.
- You cannot create mirrored volumes or RAID-5 volumes on Windows XP Home Edition, Windows XP Professional, or Windows XP 64-Bit Edition-based computers.

Thus, the dynamic disk is a new way of looking at hard disk configuration. Dynamic disks offer you more management flexibility without the partition limitation of basic disks. Dynamic disks can contain an unlimited number of volumes, but they cannot contain partitions or logical drives. Dynamic storage can be particularly beneficial for large-scale businesses when dealing with many physical hard disks involving complex setup.

#### **GPT versus MBR**

GUID Partition Table (GPT) is the next generation of a hard disk partitioning scheme developed to lift restrictions of the old MBR. Being a part of the Extensible Firmware Interface (EFI) standard proposed by Intel to replace the outdated PC BIOS, it offers a number of crucial benefits:

• Up to 128 primary partitions for the Windows implementation (only 4 in MBR);

- The maximum allowed partition size is 18 exabytes (only 2 terabytes in MBR);
- More reliable thanks to replication and cyclic redundancy check (CRC) protection of the partition table;
- A well defined and fully self-identifying partition format (data critical to the platform operation is located in partitions, but not in un-partitioned or hidden sectors as this is the case with MBR)

#### **uEFI Boot Challenges**

Introduced back in 2005 by Intel to lift restrictions of the old MBR (Master Boot Record) and PC BIOS (Basic Input/Output System), uEFI (Unified Extensible Firmware Interface) is now a recommended platform for new 64-bit Windows 8 computers. And the reason is easy to catch – besides other unique features impossible for the traditional tandem of BIOS+MBR, only a uEFI-based platform enables to accommodate Windows OS on a partition larger than 2.2TB.

Despite all uEFI advantages however, it has one quite naughty issue: a pretty standard operation with a bootable device for instance involving its connection to another SATA port results in unbootable Windows. You'll get the same result if trying to boot from a cloned system hard disk or from a restored hard disk. All these problems originate from the way uEFI+GPT bundle is organized.

Microsoft provides how-to guides to tackle this type of problems, but they demand a great deal of experience from the user, involving the use of the **cmd**, **diskpart** and **bcdedit** tools.

Paragon has a better way! Introducing an elegant technology, realized at the user side as one simple option, you can define a system GPT volume you're willing to boot from.

Below is a list of wizards where the uEFI switch boot device option can be found:

- Copy Hard Disk Wizard;
- <u>Copy Partition Wizard;</u>
- Restore Wizard;
- Boot Corrector.

#### **Apple Boot Camp**

Boot Camp is a special utility to help you set up a dual boot system (Mac OS X and 32-bit Windows XP/Vista) on Intelbased Macs. It enables to securely re-partition your hard disk (resize an existing HFS+ partition to create a separate partition for Windows) and then launch the installation process. With Boot Camp all the necessary drivers will be at your disposal. Moreover after Windows has been installed it will serve as a boot manager to choose what operating system to start up.

!

It is strongly recommended not to modify the hard disk configuration with Windows Disk Manager. Otherwise it may lead to unexpected consequences, right up to BSOD and inability to boot in Windows XP/Vista. Please use our program to correctly update both MBR and GPT.

#### **64-bit Support**

The bulk of software today is written for a 32-bit processor. It can meet the requirements of almost any end user. However that is not the case when dealing with servers processing large amounts of data with complex calculations of very large numbers. That is where 64-bit architecture comes into play. It can boast improved scalability for business applications that enables to support more customer databases and more simultaneous users on each server. Besides a 64-bit kernel can access more system resources, such as memory allocation per user. A 64-bit processor can handle over 4 billion times more memory addresses than a 32-bit processor. With these resources, even a very large database can be cached in memory.

Although many business applications run without problems on 32-bit systems, others have grown so complex that they use up the 4 GB memory limitation of a 32-bit address space. With this large amount of data, fewer memory resources are available to meet memory needs. On a 64-bit server, most queries are able to perform in the buffers available to the database.

Some 32-bit applications make the transition to the 64-bit environment seamlessly others do not. For instance, systemlevel utilities and programs that provide direct hardware access are likely to fail. Our program offers a full-fledged support of the 64-bit architecture providing fault-tolerant work for such system dependent modules as Hot Processing.

## **Copy Operations**

Hard drive duplication nowadays is becoming highly popular among PC users. That is due to some definite advantages it can offer. First of all, many people clone hard disks just to back up data for security reasons. The present day copy utilities enable to successfully transfer all on-disk information including standard bootstrap code and other system service structures, thus maintaining the operating system's working capability. In case of a system malfunction, the user can get the system back on track in minutes. No additional configuration is required, what is very convenient.

The second possible application is the upgrade of a hard disk to a new one. The capacity of a modern hard drive doubles every two years, thus opening up new possibilities for software developers. As a result programs become more complicated and require considerable amount of free space. One day the user realizes that there is no more free space left on the hard disk and the only way out is to upgrade. Usually that means that besides purchasing a new hard disk, the user is to face a large re-installation procedure spanning several days of tedious work. But all of this can be avoided just by copying the contents of the old hard disk to a new one proportionally resizing the partitions.

And the last but not least is the copying of hard disks for cloning purposes. It may be of great use when setting up similar computers. There is no need for a system administrator to install an operating system from scratch on every one of them. It is enough just to configure one and then clone it to the others.

## **Drive Partitioning**

As you probably know a hard drive is to be split into one or more partitions, since it cannot hold data until it is carved up and space is set aside for an operating system. Until recently most PCs used to have just one partition, which filled the entire hard disk and contained an OS. The situation has changed however, thanks to new cost-effective high capacity hard drives, thus opening up numerous possibilities for PC users, such as editing video, archiving music, backing up CD images, etc. Huge increase in space is great, but it poses a number of problems, most important of which are effective data organization and speed.

Large drives are always going to take longer to search than smaller volumes, and an operating system is going to have its work cut out both finding and organizing files. It is for this reason that many people decide to invest in multiple hard drives, but there is an easy solution – drive partitioning. Partitioning lets you divide a single physical drive into a number of logical drives, each of which servers as a container with its own drive letter and volume label, thus enabling the operating system to process data more efficiently. Besides partitioning makes it possible to organize data so that it is easy to find and manage. You can set aside, for instance, 40 GB of a 160 GB hard drive for the OS, 70 GB for storing video and another 50 GB for your favorite music collections to provide transparent data storage.

It is also worth mentioning to that with a hard drive properly partitioned, such routine operations as files defragmentation or consistency check will not be that annoying and time-consuming any more. By detaching the OS from the rest of the data you can tackle one more crucial issue – in case of a system malfunction, you can get the system back on track in minutes by recovering it from a backup image located on the other partition of the hard drive.

But that is not all drive partitioning may be used for. If you are willing to play games in Windows while browsing the Internet in Linux, 100-percent sure that no virus will attack your PC, drive partitioning is a necessity. In order to run several OSs on a single hard drive you are to create a corresponding number of partitions to effectively delineate the boundaries of each OS.

## Scheduling

The automation of operations is particularly effective when you have to repeat a sequence of actions on a regular basis. For example, developing a specific project on a day-to-day basis and having to make a backup every evening so as not to lose the valuable data, you will really appreciate, when this kind of routine operations will be carried out automatically without your participation.

Another aspect of any automation process is that it allows an optimization of your computer's work-load. This is especially important when operations require a considerable amount of computer resources – processor time, memory and more. A number of tasks, which can decrease the performance, can be run during the night or whenever the computer has the least work-load to perform.

The program has a special tool for scheduling. You can set out a timetable for any operation and it will start at a specified time without interrupting your current activity.

## Windows BitLocker

BitLocker is a security feature that enables to protect data of your volumes with 128/256-bit AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) encryption. It has first appeared in Windows Vista Enterprise and Vista Ultimate to protect contents of hard disks from offline attacks for instance, when your hard disk is stolen and connected to another computer to retrieve data it contains.

Our product enables to work with volumes encrypted by BitLocker, but only when they are unlocked. Until that locked volumes will be recognized in the program's interface as 'Not formatted'. You can unlock this type of volumes only through Windows-native facilities:

- Graphical user interface for Windows,
- manage-bde command line tool for Windows and the WinPE recovery media.

To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>How to Work with Bitlocked Volumes</u> chapter.

In the current version of our product the following operations are allowed to accomplish on volumes encrypted by BitLocker:

- Backup Partition;
- Restore Partition;
- Copy Partition;
- Delete Partition;
- Change Volume Label;
- Add/Remove Drive Letter;
- Hide/Unhide Partition;
- Mark Partition as Active/Inactive;
- Change Serial Number;

Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

- Change Partition ID;
- Test Surface;
- Check File System Integrity;
- Properties.

## **Windows Components**

In the given section you can find all the information necessary to successfully work with the Windows version of the product.

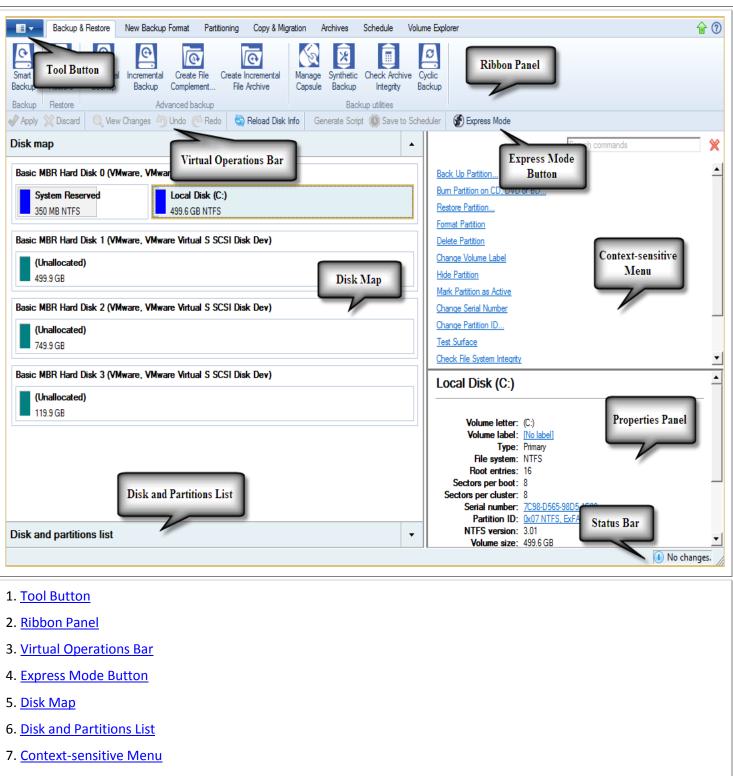
#### **Interface Overview**

This chapter introduces the graphical interface of the program. The design of the interface precludes any mistake being made on the part of the user. Most operations are performed through the system of wizards. Buttons and menus are accompanied by easy understandable icons. Nevertheless, any problems that might occur while managing the program can be tackled by reading this very chapter.

#### **General Layout**

When you start the program, the first component that is displayed is called the Launcher. It enables to run wizards and dialogs, to specify program settings, to visualize the operating environment and the hard disk configuration.

The Launcher's window can be conditionally subdivided into several sections that differ in their purpose and functionality:



- 8. Properties Panel
- 9. Status Bar

A number of panels offer similar functionality with a synchronized layout. The program enables to conceal some of them to simplify the interface management.

#### **Tool Button**

By clicking on this button the user can:

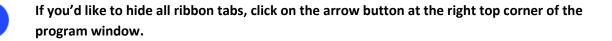
• Launch auxiliary wizards,

33

- Get access to the program settings,
- Collect and send a log files package to the Support Team,
- Go to Paragon's website to download a free update, register the product, visit Paragon's Knowledge Base, etc.

#### **Ribbon Panel**

An area across the top of the program's window is called the Ribbon Panel. It makes almost all the product capabilities available to the user in a single place. A Ribbon Tab is an area on the panel that contains buttons organized in groups by functionality. Each button corresponds to a certain program wizard or dialog.



#### **Virtual Operations Bar**

The program supports previewing the resulting layout of hard disks before actually executing operations (so-called virtual mode of execution). In fact, when the virtual mode is enabled, the program does not accomplish operations immediately, but places them on the List of Pending Operations for later execution.

The Virtual Operations Bar enables to manage pending operations.

BUTTON	FUNCTIONALITY
5	Cancel the last virtual operation on the List of Pending Operations
C	Cancel the last undo virtual operation on the List of Pending Operations
Q	Display the List of Pending Operations
<b>V</b>	Launch the real execution of virtual operations
×	Cancel all virtual operations on the List of Pending Operations
	Generate a script out of all pending operations
٩	Schedule pending operations

Virtual mode is an effective way of protection from any troubles, since no operations will be executed until clicking the Apply button for confirmation, thus giving a second chance to weigh all pros and cons of this or that particular operation. The program politely reminds the user that there are unsaved changes by showing the following window:

🛕 You have unsaved changes.

#### **Express Mode Button**

By clicking on this button the user can switch to the <u>express mode of operation</u> at any time.

#### **Disk Map**

As the name infers, the Disk Map displays the layout of physical and logical disks. Physical disks are represented with rectangle bars that contain small-sized bars. These small-sized bars represent logical disks. Their color depends on the file system of the appropriate partition. By looking at the size of the bar's shaded area it is possible to estimate the used disk space. For the selected at the moment object there's the possibility to call a context-sensitive popup menu with available operations.

Disk	мар	•
Basic	: MBR Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	
	Local Disk (C:)	
	499.6 GB NTFS	

Large-sized bars display the following information about physical disks:

- Type (basic or dynamic MBR/GPT),
- Manufacturer,
- Model.

Small-sized bars display the following information about logical disks and blocks of free space:

- Volume label (if exists),
- Drive letter,
- Total size,
- File system.

The Disk Map is synchronized with the <u>Context-sensitive Menu</u> and the <u>Properties Panel</u>. Thus by selecting a disk on the map, the two will automatically display detailed information on it. To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Disk Properties</u> chapter.

# Since the Disk Map and the Disk and Partitions List have the same purpose, the user is allowed to extend only one at the moment by using a corresponding arrow button.

#### **Disk and Partitions List**

Ĭ

The Disk and Partitions List is another helpful tool that helps to get a clear-cut picture on the current state of the system hard disks and partitions. All objects (disks, partitions, or blocks of free space) on the list are sorted according to their starting position. For every item there is the possibility to call a context-sensitive popup menu with available operations.

Disk and partitions list								•
Name	File system	Volume size	Partition size	Used	Free	Volume label	Hidden	A
Basic MBR Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)		500 GB						
िSystem Reserved Salacal Disk (C:)	NTFS NTFS	350 MB 499.6 GB	350 MB 499.6 GB	256.8 MB 11.7 GB	93.1 MB 487.9 GB	System Reserved [No label]	No No	Y N
Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	0	500 GP				[]		
(Unallocated)		Up Hard Disk		1	499.9 GB	[No label]	No	N
<ul> <li>Basic MBR Hard Disk 2 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)</li> <li>(Unallocated)</li> <li>Basic MBR Hard Disk 3 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)</li> </ul>	Ra Conv	Hard Disk on C Hard Disk	D, DVD or BD.		749.9 GB	[No label]	No	N
Sector Analogicated (Contract, Contract, Contr		re Hard Disk		Bytes	119.9 GB	[No label]	No	N
	Update MBR							
	Conv	ert to GPT hard	l disk					
	🍣 Unde	ete Partitions						
	Wipe	Hard Disk						
	Edit∕∖	/iew Sectors						
	Prope	rties						

The Disk and Partitions List provides detailed information on all hard disks and partitions found in the system including the following properties:

- Name,
- Volume label (if exists),
- Drive letter,
- File system type,
- Volume size,
- Amount of used and unused (free) space,
- Active/Inactive attribute,
- Hidden/Unhidden attribute.

The Disk and Partitions List is synchronized with the <u>Context-sensitive Menu</u> and the <u>Properties Panel</u>. Thus by selecting a disk on the list, the two will automatically display detailed information on it. To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Disk Properties</u> chapter.



Since the Disk Map and the Disk and Partitions List have the same purpose, the user is allowed to extend only one at the moment by using a corresponding arrow button.

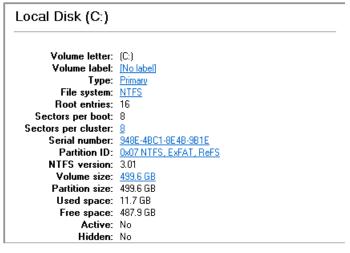
#### **Context-sensitive Menu**

The Context-sensitive Menu shows a list of operations available for an object (disk, partition, or block of free space) selected either on the <u>Disk Map</u> or the <u>Disk and Partitions List</u>. If you click a corresponding record the appropriate wizard or dialog will be started. All default values for the operation parameters will correspond to the object's settings. If there too many items on the list, type in the first word of the required command in the **Search commands** field to filter the list.

	Search commands	<b>×</b>
Back Up Partition		<b>_</b>
Burn Partition on CD, DVD or BD		
Copy Partition		
Restore Partition		
Format Partition		
Delete Partition		
Move/Resize Partition		
Convert File System		
Defragment Partition		
Defragment MFT		
Compact MFT		
Change Volume Label		
Hide Partition		
Mark Partition as Active		•

# **Properties Panel**

The Properties Panel provides information on the object (disk, partition, or block of free space) selected either on the <u>Disk Map</u> or the <u>Disk and Partitions List</u>.



The Properties Panel helps to obtain the following data:

#### For a hard disk

- Model,
- Serial number,
- Type of hard disk (basic or dynamic MBR/GPT),
- Total size (in GB),
- Information on geometry of the disk (amount of sectors per track, heads and cylinders).

#### For a partition

- Drive letter assigned to the disk,
- Volume label (if exists),
- Type of the logical disk,
- File system,
- Root entries,

Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

- Serial number,
- NTFS version,
- Partition ID,
- Total size, used space and free space (in GB), etc.

Besides you can modify practically any partition property by clicking on the required value.

#### For a block of free space

• Total size (in GB).

## **Status Bar**

This is the bottom part of the main window. The Status Bar displays menu hints, for each item the cursor points to.

# **Settings Overview**

To call the Settings dialog, please click **Tool Button**, then select **Settings**. All the settings are grouped into several sections, which functions are described in the following paragraphs. The list of sections is placed on the left side of the dialog. By selecting a section from the list, you can open a set of options.

To get a detailed description to any setting, control, or field of the program just click the hint button and then the object you need.

## **General Options**

🧏 General options	
Partition Alignment Mode	
Vista	-
Allign partitions according to the rules used in Windows Vista and later OSes.	
_ <u>C</u> heck FS integrity policy	
Once	•
Standard protection from data loss with acceptable performance. The file system integrity will be checked for each volume only once just before accomplishing data-sensitive operations.	
Data Loss Protection mode	
Reset	-
Medium protection from data loss.	

This section contains a set of general options that will be taken into account during any operation carried out with the program:

- Partition Alignment mode. There are three options you can choose from:
  - **Legacy**. DOS and Windows OSes before Vista required that partitions had to be aligned to the "disk cylinder" or 63 sectors to address and access sectors correctly. It was OK, until 4K hard drives came into scene. When partitions are aligned this way on this type of disk, each logical cluster is linked to two physical 4K clusters, thus resulting in a double read-write operation.

- Vista. Since Windows Vista, operating systems do not use the archaic CHS (cylinder/head/sector) addressing scheme, but the Logical Block Addressing (LBA), where sectors are addressed continuously over the whole disk drive. It is optimal for both, 512B and new 4K disk drivers.
- Inheritance. Select the option to disable automatic alignment of partitions.
- Check FS integrity policy. Accomplishment of any data-sensitive operation (resize, move, merge, redistribute, change cluster size, etc.) is potential with data loss. To minimize this risk, it's recommended to check integrity of your file system before this type of operations, despite the fact that it's quite time consuming. We offer you several options to let you choose, which is best for you:
  - **Always**. Maximum protection, but minimal performance. The file system integrity will be checked each time it's necessary to guarantee the maximum protection for the on-disk data.
  - **Once**. Standard protection with acceptable performance. The file system integrity will be checked for each volume only once just before accomplishing data-sensitive operations.
  - **Never**. No protection, but maximum performance. If you're not 100% sure your disk is rock solid, please do not use this option.
- **Data Loss Protection mode**. To guarantee safety for your information when a data-sensitive operation has been abruptly interrupted as a result of a computer reset, or a power outage, there are several techniques, that correspond to the options below:
  - **Do not protect**. No protection, but maximum performance. If you're not 100% sure you're completely safe from a power outage, or an accidental reset of your computer, please do not use this option.
  - **Reset**. Standard protection with acceptable performance. Maintaining a special journal, our program enables to automatically complete a data-sensitive operation interrupted by an accidental reset of your computer from our bootable recovery media, thus reviving the corrupted partition.
  - **Power loss**. Maximum protection, but minimal performance. Besides journaling, our program will also disable cache of your disk when accomplishing data-sensitive operations to avoid data loss even in case of a power outage.

# **Backup Image Options**

# <sup>7</sup> Backup image options

Control archive integrity	
Choose this option to allow writing of specific data that will later be used during restore to check the archive integrity. It can slow down the backup operation.	
Set image file names automatically	
Choose this option to automatically name files in complex archive.	
Compression level	_
Normal compression <	
Good compression. Provides average speed with the reasonable image size.	
_Image split	_
Enable image splitting	
Choose this option to enable splitting the archive to several files	
M <u>a</u> ximum split size: 1 MB 🏯	

This section contains a set of options that will be taken into account during backup/restore operations:

- **Control archive integrity**. Mark the checkbox to guarantee that all backup images created with the program are 100 percent flawless. If you decided not to control the archive integrity, the backup operation would take about 3-5% less time.
- Set image file names automatically. Mark the checkbox to make the program automatically set a file name for every volume of a complex backup image. Otherwise you will need to do it manually during the backup operation.
- **Compression level**. From the pull-down list you can select the desired compression level for backup images that will be used by default.
- Enable image splitting. Mark the checkbox to automatically split every backup image to volumes of a particular size.

Splitting images enables to tackle problems caused by a maximum file size limitation of some file systems.

• Maximum split size. With the spinner control you can specify a maximum size for backup volumes.

#### **General Copy and Backup Options**

X

General copy and backup options

- HDD raw processing Copy an entire hard disk sector by sector without taking into account its partition structure.
- Partition raw processing Copy/Backup each partition sector by sector. All sectors will be processed one by one (even unused sectors). Requires more time to complete the operation.
- Skip archive files stored in archive library Choose this option to skip archive files stored in archive library. This will reduce operation time and backup image size.

This section contains a set of options that will be taken into account during copy and backup operations:

- HDD raw processing. Mark the checkbox to copy/back up a hard disk in the sector-by-sector mode, thus ignoring its information structure (e.g. unallocated space or unused sectors of existing partitions will be processed as well). This can help to avoid problems with hidden data created by certain applications or the system administrator. However, it will take more time to accomplish the operation.
- **Partition raw processing**. Mark the checkbox to copy a partition in the sector-by-sector mode to successfully process unknown file systems. However it is not recommended to enable this option when working with supported file systems as it takes more time to accomplish the operation.
- Skip OS auxiliary files. Mark the checkbox to skip OS auxiliary files (like pagefile.sys, hiberfil.sys, etc.), thus reducing the operation time and the resulted size of the backup image.
- Skip archive files stored in archive library. Mark the checkbox to skip backup images registered in the archive database, thus reducing the operation time and the resulted size of the backup image.
- Automatic BCD Update. Unmark the checkbox to suppress automatic update of BCD (Boot Configuration Data) after copy/restore operations.

<sup>🔽</sup> Automatic BCD update

Add boot entry for target partition to BCD hive on copy\restore source partition

0

By clicking the link at the bottom of the window you can jump to the <u>Copy/Backup Exclude</u> <u>Options</u>.

# **CD/DVD/BD Recording Options**

CD/DVD/BD recording options	
<ul> <li>Burn every CD/DVD/BD disk to the end.</li> <li>Choose this option to allow the disk to be copied by third party tools.</li> <li>Recording speed</li> </ul>	
Maximum recording speed Fast recording. Choose this option if you have good quality disks and re	▼ ecorder.
Boot options Specify a <u>b</u> ootable ISO image to place on CD, DVD or BD along with b bootcd.iso A The specified ISO image <b>does not exist</b> .	ackup data: Brow <u>s</u> e
Specify how would you like to boot from CD, DVD or BD:	<b>_</b>
ISO image folder         .\         Please select a folder to place ISO images to when CD, DVD or BD ISO	Bro <u>w</u> se D maker is used.

This section contains a set of options that will be taken into account during CD/DVD/BD burn operations:

- Burn every CD/DVD/BD to the end. By default, the program does not create ISO 9660 compliant burning sessions, as it processes data on-the-fly and can only estimate the resulted session size. That's why no third party tool will get access to the recorded data. To tackle the issue, mark the checkbox to make the program create a standard Disk-at-Once session. It may slow down the burning process, as every CD/DVD/BD will be recorded up to the end, no matter how much actual information to contain.
- **Recording speed**. The user may define how fast a CD/DVD/BD will be recorded (minimum, normal and maximum). Besides there is an automatic mode when the program will set the most appropriate speed for every CD/DVD/BD.
- **Bootable ISO image**. That's the image to be placed together with the backup data. By default, the program offers its own bootable ISO image, which contains a Linux/DOS recovery environment. However, the user is free to use any bootable ISO image.
- **CD/DVD/BD boot capability**. The program enables to choose whether any recorded CD/DVD/BD will be bootable, or only the first one for a session, or without that function at all.
- Folder where the ISO image is to be placed. When the user decides not to physically burn a CD/DVD/BD, but create an ISO image file, this very folder will be used to contain these images.

## **Hot Processing Options**

Mot processing options	
✓ Enable hot processing	
Unit processing technology —	
Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service	Ŧ
Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service is a reliable technology designed to ba up volumes being locked by numerous active transactions of VSS supporting applications. Microsoft VSS technology requires over 300 MB of free space on mounted NTFS volume for temporary data. This technology is provided for Wind XP and newest Windows versions, but unavailable for old versions of Windows (98/ME/NT/2000).	any Jows
Additional options	
C Always use hot processing	
Use hot processing only when partition is locked	
Hot processing temporary drive:	
Number of attempts to start VSS: 3 🚖	
Timeout between attempts (in seconds): 120 🚖	

Change run during backup options

In this section you may configure the hot processing mode:

- Enable hot processing. Mark the checkbox to enable the so called hot data processing mode that is specially designed to process data without restarting your operating system.
- Hot processing technology. From the pull-down list you can select the required hot processing technology.
- Always use hot processing. Select the option to process partitions without making them locked. Thus you will be able to keep working with them as usual.
- Use hot processing only when partition is locked. Select the option to use the hot processing only when partitions are locked and cannot be processed without restarting the computer. Please keep in mind, that once you start any operation on a partition in this mode, it will automatically be locked by the program, thus you won't be able to keep working with it as usual.
- Hot processing temporary drive. Here you can select a disk drive that will be used to store the temporary hot backup data (by default – C:).
- Attempts to start VSS. Here you can set how many attempts to start Microsoft VSS the program is to do before automatically rebooting the system and accomplishing the operation in a special boot-up mode.
- **Timeout between attempts (in seconds)**. Here you can set a time period between different attempts to start Microsoft VSS.
- Switch between hot processing technologies. Mark the checkbox to automatically switch between Paragon Hot Processing and Microsoft VSS if one of them is unavailable at the moment.



By clicking the link at the bottom of the window you can jump to the <u>Run during Backup</u> <u>Options</u>.

#### **Run during Backup Options**



#### Run during backup options

For backup operations in the Paragon Hot Processing mode you have a possibility to run external programs and commands at different stages of the backup process. The key point to link such execution to is a short period of time when a snapshot is taken. (Snapshot is a map of used blocks; the system is totally frozen for writing when it is taken).

Please specify executable files for each stage if necessary:

$\_\_$ Execute at the beginning of the backup process before ta	aking a snapshot
Enter a file name here	Browse
Execute after taking a snapshot	
Enter a file name here	Bro <u>w</u> se
Execute after finishing the backup process	
Enter a file name here	Browse

#### Change hot processing options

In this section you can specify external applications to execute at various phases of the backup process. It can be particularly useful when imaging systems with high availability requirements (MS SQL, MS Exchange, etc.), since it enables to create a consistent snapshot even as the data is currently modified. The point is to provide a coherent state of all open files and databases involved in a backup, taking into account that applications may still keep writing to disks.

Actually the backup process consists of two phases: the preparation phase (snapshot) and the data-copying phase. There are three points of the backup when external commands/programs can be launched:

- Execute at the beginning of the backup process before taking a snapshot. Here you can specify an executable file that will help you to prepare running applications for taking a snapshot. It may contain specific commands/programs to delete unnecessary files, suspend services, flush transactions or caches, etc. Everything depends on the used applications.
- **Execute after taking a snapshot**. Here you can specify an executable file that will run just after taking a snapshot. It may contain specific commands/programs, e.g. to resume the previously suspended services, etc. Everything depends on the used applications.
- Execute after finishing the backup process. Here you can specify an executable file that will run after the backup process has been accomplished. It may include commands/ programs that will move the backup image to a particular location, etc.

# By clicking the link at the bottom of the window you can jump to the <u>Hot Processing</u> <u>Options</u>.

By clicking the Browse button you can get into the browser-like window to choose an executable file.

Look in:	🗐 Local Disk (C:) 🔽 🧔 🎇 🙎	
	Name	Size Date
Disk Drives	Name	Size         Date           10/22/2013 5:04:34 AM           10/22/2013 5:01:15 AM           10/22/2013 5:01:15 AM           10/22/2013 5:01:21 AM           10/22/2013 5:01:21 AM           10/22/2013 5:01:22 AM           10/22/2013 5:01:22 AM           9/3/2013 2:41:44 PM           8/22/2013 12:09:07 PM           8/22/2013 8:36:45 AM           8/22/2013 12:09:07 PM           8/22/2013 2:54:48 PM           9/3/2013 2:54:48 PM           9/3/2013 2:48:22 PM
	File name:       Files of type:   Executable Files	9/3/2013 10:43:00 AM
		Open Cancel

The program provides the ability to work with three types of executable files (.exe, .bat, .cmd). It is up to the user to write batch files to safely prepare applications for backup. There are some certain general requirements for that:

- All programs and commands must execute sequentially and finish before the .bat file completes its work.
- It is recommended to use external commands/programs in the following format **Start/wait program.exe**. The **wait** option will help to start an application and wait until it completes its work. This will guarantee that all included commands/programs complete their execution before the batch file does.

This function is only available when the Hot Processing mode is enabled.

The program enables to set parameters for an executable file directly from the line. However, if the file path contains word gaps it is necessary to enclose it in quotes in order to make the program distinguish between the path and the used parameters.

By clicking the link at the bottom of the window you can jump to the <u>Hot Processing</u> <u>Options</u>.

#### **Partitioning Options**



Н

Partitioning Options

-Confirmations

- $\fbox$  Ask for volume label before partition delete
- Ask confirmation when converting FAT16 to FAT32.

This section contains a set of options that will be taken into account during partitioning operations:

- **Request confirmation before partition deletion**. Mark the checkbox to activate an additional security mechanism. Thus when going to delete a partition you will be automatically requested to enter its label.
- Request confirmation when converting FAT16 to FAT32. Mark the checkbox to automatically request confirmation before converting FAT16 to FAT32. There are a number of situations when this kind of conversion is the only way out to accomplish the operation. For instance, you are going to migrate your system to a larger hard disk with the proportional resize of existing partitions, what is very convenient. As a result you can get original FAT16 partitions go beyond the 4GB limit. Thus without conversion to FAT32, this operation will in no way be possible to accomplish. The same goes for any copy hard disk/partition or restore hard disk/partition operation involving an extra upsizing.

## **E-Mail Options**



Specify you	e-mail acco	unt options:	
Outgoing mail	server (SMTP):	Enter a server name here	
<u>U</u> ser e-mail ad	dress:	Enter an e-mail address her	
<u>S</u> MTP port nur	mber:	0	
⊢ □ My outg	oing server requ	ires <u>a</u> uthentication ———	
User <u>n</u> ame:	Enter an user	name here	
Password:	Enter a passw	ord here	
	st e-mail		
		account options. The progra e specified in <b>User e-mail</b> a	-

#### Specify e-mail notification options:

Г	– 🧾 <u>S</u> end E-Mail notification on apply
	<u>T</u> o: Enter an e-mail address here
	☐ Send mail in <u>H</u> TML format
	Send complete report after applying operations
	☐ Send graphical view of the disk sub-system before and after apply
	Select the operations you would like to be notified about

This section contains a set of options that will be taken into account during the Send log files and Send e-mail notification operations:

- Outgoing mail server (SMTP). To send messages by using the built-in mail client, it is necessary to have access to a computer running an SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) server. All outgoing messages are first sent to the SMTP server, which in its turn delivers them to the required recipients. The address may be represented as a traditional Internet host name (e.g.: mail.com) or as an IP numeric address (e.g. xxx.xxx.xxx).
- User e-mail address. Specify an e-mail address that has been assigned by the Internet Service Provider or organization's e-mail administrator.
- **My outgoing server requires authentication**. Activate the option to allow the program to make authentication on the server before sending messages.

- User name. Enter the name that will be used to log in to the e-mail account.

46

- Password. Enter the password that will be used to access the mail server.

When you're ready with the settings, click on the Send test e-mail button to check if everything is OK.

• Send e-mail notification on apply. Specify an e-mail to send notifications on the carried out operations.

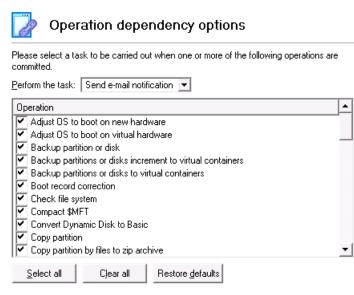
- Send mail in HTML format. Activate the option to create messages in the HTML format instead of plain text.

- **Send complete report after applying operations**. Activate the option to create an in-depth report on the carried out operations and send it after performing the last operation.

- Send graphical view of the disk sub-system before and after apply. Activate the option to allow the program to attach two pictures of the disk layout made before and after the operation is completed.

By clicking the link at the bottom of the window you can jump to the <u>Operation</u> <u>Dependency Options</u>.

#### **Operation Dependency Options**



This section contains a set of options that will be taken into account when the Send e-mail notification on apply function is enabled. By marking/unmarking a checkbox opposite the required operation you can choose whether to receive an e-mail notification on its completion or not.



You won't be notified if an operation requires the system restart.

## **Virtual Mode Options**



# Virtual mode options

-0	perations mode
F	Allow virtual mode
	Set this option on to carry out all the operations virtually. You will be able to commit the changes or rollback all of them or the last one. If you switch this option off, the operations will be carried out immediately.

Close progress dialog automatically

Set this option on to automatically close the progress dialog after committing the changes.

In this section you may configure the virtual mode:

• Allow virtual mode. Mark the checkbox to enable the virtual mode. It is an effective way of protection from any troubles, since no operation will be executed until confirmation, thus giving you a second chance to weigh all pros and cons of this or that particular operation.



We strongly recommend you to enable this mode.

 Close progress dialog automatically. Mark the checkbox to automatically close the progress dialog after accomplishing operations.

#### **File System Conversion Options**



#### Virtual mode options

- Operations mode	
Allow virtual mode Set this option on to carry out all the operations virtually. You will be able to commit the changes or rollback all of them or the last one. If you switch this option off, the operations will be carried out immediately.	

Close progress dialog automatically Set this option on to automatically close the progress dialog after committing the changes.

This section contains a set of options that will be taken into account when converting FAT and NTFS file systems. By default, the program takes locale (regional) settings from the system. Problems might occur however because of different standards for file names and file time stamps (Created, Modified and Last Access Time) of NTFS and FATxx file systems.

To tackle problems of that kind you can manually set:

• **Time zone** to use during the convert operation. NTFS keeps file timestamps in GMT (Greenwich Mean Time) while FAT uses a fixed local date and time. The program takes proper account of these differences and enables to adjust timestamp values.



An incorrectly chosen time zone might lead to inability to launch certain software.

• Language for file names to use during the convert operation. NTFS stores file names in Unicode while FAT/FAT32 uses ANSI to save short file names (also called the DOS aliases). The codepage information is required for the correct conversion of non-English file names from Unicode to ANSI and vice versa.



An incorrectly chosen codepage will certainly result in corruption of non-English file names.

Request confirmation of settings before NTFS < - > FAT/FAT32 conversion. Mark the checkbox to automatically
display the local settings dialog to check and modify (if necessary) the default parameters before launching the
convert file system operation.

## **Copy/Backup Exclude Options**



Exclude from Copy/Backup

Specify masks for files and folders that must be excluded from copy/backup operations:

⊟ ! F	iles that contair	is your e-mai	<b>il data</b> (9 fi	ilters)	
Add filter	Rename categor	y <u>Delete cate</u>	<u>yıop</u> :		
*.wab	Delete filter				
*.pab	<u>Delete filter</u>				
*.oab	<u>Delete filter</u>				
*.pst	Delete filter				
⁼.ost	Delete filter				
*.dbx	<u>Delete filter</u>				
*.log	<u>Delete filter</u>				
×	Delete filter				
*.r₩z	Delete filter				
	ct <u>Delete filter</u>				
*.conta	<b>ct</b> <u>Delete filter</u>				
*.conta		tallations (8 f	ïlters)		
*.conta	<b>ct</b> <u>Delete filter</u>				
*.conta	ct <u>Delete filter</u> xecutable & Ins				
*.conta	ct <u>Delete filter</u> xecutable & Ins <u>Rename categor</u>				
*.conta	ct <u>Delete filter</u> xecutable & Ins Rename categor elete filter				

Change general backup options

In this section the program enables to specify what data should be automatically ignored during copy and sector-based backup operations. You can filter certain files or folders either by the manual selection or by creating masks, what is more preferable. Thus you will be able to effectively manage contents of your backup images or partition/hard disk copies.

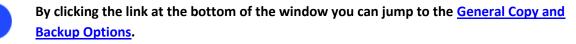
By default, there are no available filters. To create a filter, please click the Add Category... button.

Name:	3		
Filter:	Enter a mask or file name here Browse		
Description	tion: Enter filter description here		
You can use wildcards ? and * as file name mask. Wildcards in path are not allowed.			
	OK Cancel		

In the opened dialog the program allows the user to define the following parameters:

- Name. Give to the filter any name you like, but try to use an informative one;
- Filter. Press the Browse button to select files or folders you would like to be excluded or specify a filter mask by using \* or ? wildcards;
- Description. Add a short description to the filter not to miss it up later.

Click the OK button and you will get a new item on the list of filters. By marking/unmarking a checkbox opposite its name you can choose whether to use it or not.



#### **File Backup Exclude Options**



#### Exclude from file backup archives

Specify masks for files and folders that must be excluded from archives:



In this section you can find a lot of ready-made exclude filters to effectively control contents of your file-based backup images. Please note, by selecting certain filters you specify what data will be ignored during file-based backup operations, thus you specify the data you'd like not to be added to the resulted archives.

Anyway you've got the option to create your own filter by clicking the Add category... button.

Name:	3		
Filter:	Enter a mask or file name here Browse		
Description:	Enter filter description here		
You ca in path	n use wildcards ? and * as file name mask. Wildcards are not allowed.		
	OK Cancel		

In the opened dialog the program allows the user to define the following parameters:

- Name. Give to the filter any name you like, but try to use an informative one;
- Filter. Press the Browse button to select files or folders you would like to be excluded or specify a filter mask by using \* or ? wildcards;
- Description. Add a short description to the filter not to miss it up later.

Click the OK button and you will get a new item on the list of filters. By marking/unmarking a checkbox opposite its name you can choose whether to use it or not.

## **File Backup Include Options**



Include into file backup archive

Specify masks for files and folders that must be added to archives:

<u>Add filt</u>	ter Rename category Delete category	
*.chm	Delete filter	
*.htm	<u>Delete filter</u>	
*.mht	Delete filter	
*.html	<u>Delete filter</u>	
*.pdf	<u>Delete filter</u>	
*.txt	Delete filter	
*.hlp	Delete filter	
*.rtf	<u>Delete filter</u>	
*.doc	Delete filter	
*.doc:	x <u>Delete filter</u>	
*.xls	Delete filter	
*.xlsx	Delete filter	
*.wri	<u>Delete filter</u>	
*.ppt	Delete filter	
*.pptx	Delete filter	
*.vsd	Delete filter	
*.vdx	Delete filter	
*.vst	Delete filter	
*. vtx	Delete filter	
*. <b>v</b> ss	Delete filter	

In this section you can find a lot of ready-made include filters to effectively control contents of your file-based backup images. Please note, by selecting certain filters you specify what data will be processed during file-based backup operations, thus you automatically ignore files that do not match, so they won't be added to the resulted archives.

Anyway you've got the option to create your own filter by clicking the Add category... button.

Name:	3		
Filter:	Enter a mask or file name here Browse		
Description:	Enter filter description here		
(1) You ca in path	n use wildcards ? and * as file name mask. Wildcards are not allowed.		
	OK Cancel		

In the opened dialog the program allows the user to define the following parameters:

- Name. Give to the filter any name you like, but try to use an informative one;
- Filter. Press the Browse button to select files or folders you would like to be excluded or specify a filter mask by using \* or ? wildcards;
- **Description**. Add a short description to the filter not to miss it up later.

Click the OK button and you will get a new item on the list of filters. By marking/unmarking a checkbox opposite its name you can choose whether to use it or not.

## **Log Files Options**

Log files options
Logs directory
N Browse
Please select a folder name to place an engine log files (stubact.log etc.)
🔲 Write logs in Bluescreen
Choose this option to allow engine operations logging when actions need to be restarted and continued in Bluescreen mode
Stubact log file truncation
Choose a storage life span for the stubact log file. Please note, once the defined period has been expired, the file will be emptied.
Infinite
C Minimal
O Custom
1 🚖 hours 💌
<u>C</u> lean now

In this section you can set up the program logging engine:

- Logs directory to specify location of program log files. By default, all logs are placed to: C:\Program
   Files\Paragon Software\product's name\program\
- Write logs in Bluescreen to enable the program logging in a special boot-up mode
- Stubact log file truncation to specify a storage life span for the stubact.log file:
  - **Infinite** not to empty the file ever;

- Minimal to have the file emptied all the time;
- **Custom** to set a certain storage life span for the file. Please note, once the defined period has been expired, the file will be emptied.



We strongly recommend you not to choose the Minimal option, as in case of having problems with the program, our Support Team won't be able to study operation logs, thus help you out.

#### **FTP Sites Options**

FTP site settings		
Look in: 🔄 🥝 🥥 🎑 🖾 💥		
Address: [ftp://		
• · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
Create FTP/SFTP location		
✓ Use SFTP connection		
Address: sftp://sftp.hidrive.strato.com 🔽 Port: 22		
🔲 Anonymous login 🛛 🔲 Allow OpenSSH key-based authentication		
Login: xxxxxxxxxx		
Password: Save password		
Name: sttp.hidrive.strato.com		
Connect Cancel		

In this section you can manage online backup storages located on FTP or SFTP servers. By clicking on available buttons, you can create, modify, delete an FTP/SFTP location, etc.

To create an FTP/SFTP location, you've got to specify a number of options:

- Use SFTP connection. Mark the option to connect to the desired SFTP server if necessary;
- Address. Type in an address to the desired server;
- Port. Specify the required port (21 for FPT and 22 for SFTP by default);
- Anonymous login. Mark the option to set up anonymous connection. Typical username for this type of login is "anonymous";
- Use Active Mode (only for FTP). Mark the option if your provider requires this type of authentication;
- Allow Open SSH key-based authentication (only for SFTP). If your provider requires this type of authentication, mark the option to specify public and private keys and a passphrase;

Public key file:	Browse
Private key file:	Browse
Passphrase:	

- Login. Enter a login;
- Password. Enter a password. Click Remember password to save it next time you back up to this location;

Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

• **Name**. By default, the program uses the provided address as the connection name, which can be modified however.

0

You need to check out yourself Windows Firewall or programs of this kind let our program work with the required port (21 for FTP and 22 for SFTP by default).

By clicking the **Connect** button the provided location will be checked. If ok, you'll get a new item on the list named after this location. By clicking the + icon you can browse it to specify a more exact location for your backups.

# **Viewing Disk Properties**

The <u>Disk Map</u> and the <u>Disk and Partitions List</u> are the main tools to get information on the properties of hard disks and partitions available in the system. To know more on the subject, please consult the corresponding chapters of the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter.

# **Viewing Image Properties**

General information on backup archives can be obtained with the following tools:

# **Using the Restore Wizard**

• Click the Backup & Restore tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Restore.



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

At first, the wizard displays the Welcome page – simply click the Next button at the foot of the dialog window.

The next page refers to Browse for Archive. By clicking the **Switch to Archive List View** link, you can see a list of images contained in the Archive Database (if any).

<b>R</b>	Restore Wizard	?	×
	Browse for Archive		
	省 Show all 🔄 🔄 🚺		
	Type Creation Date 🗸 Source Object	Size	
	10/9/2013 10:33:47 PM Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	500 GB	
	▲           Switch to File View	Þ	
	Archive File Details		
	Name: Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI E	)isk Dev)	
	Comment: [No comment is available]		
	Type: Internal Hard Disk Drive Total size: 500 GB		
	File: C://arc_new.pfi		
	To continue, click Next		
	< Back (Next >	Canc	el 🔤

To get a clear-cut picture on properties of the required image, just click on it and the section below will (i.e. Archive File Details) display a short description, including:

- Information on a type of the archive contents (whether it is sector-based or file-based),
- Whether the archive is compressed or not,
- Whether the archive is password protected or not,
- The date, when the archive was created.

In addition, there are some special graphical flags to indicate crucial properties:

FLAG	FUNCTIONALITY	
6	Disk archive	
P	Partition archive	
	File archive	
31	MBR archive	
08	System archive	
8	Encrypted archive	
ą	Compressed archive	
G	Complex archive	

Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

	Filtered archive	
8	Differential archive	
8	Incremental archive	
<b>}</b> €*	File increment to a partition archive	

To easily manage images in the Archive Database, the program provides the following functionality:

BUTTON	FUNCTIONALITY	
6	Refresh the contents of the database	
₿	Show only existing archives	
B	Add the selected archive to the database	
<b>B</b> ≱	Delete the selected archive from the database	

Besides you may filter backup archives to decide whether to show only file, partition or hard disk archives. To do that, please select the required filter in the left top corner of the page.

#### Browse for Archive

🌱 Show all 🛛 👤	S 🔒	B
Phow all		
📲 Show disks  🔪		Source Object
Show partitions	0:43:04 PM	New Volume (E:)
警 Show file archives	0:42:21 PM	NEW VOLUME (F:)
S 10/9/2013 1/	0:41:54 PM	NEW VOLUME
10/9/20131	0:33:47 PM	Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware,

By clicking the **Switch to File View** link, you can find the required image in the browser-like window.

? (î) **Restore Wizard** Browse for Archive Look in: [ 📴 Local Disk (C:) -👼 💥 星 Name Size Date 🚊 🕞 Local Disk (C:) 🕂 🔐 arc\_new 10/9/2013 10:34:00 PM ···· 📄 arc\_new.pbf 264.5 KB 10/9/2013 10:34:00 PM 💌 Switch to Archive List View Archive File Details Name: Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev) Comment: [No comment is available] Type: Internal Hard Disk Drive Total size: 500 GB File: C:/arc\_new/arc\_new.pbf To continue, click Next < Back Next > Cancel

The section below (i.e. Archive File Details) displays a short description of the selected image, including:

- Information on a type of the archive contents (whether it is sector-based or file-based),
- Whether the archive is compressed or not,
- Whether the archive is password protected or not,
- The date, when the archive was created.

Moreover, on this page you've got the possibility to create new folders, delete existing files/folders or map network drives by clicking the appropriate buttons.

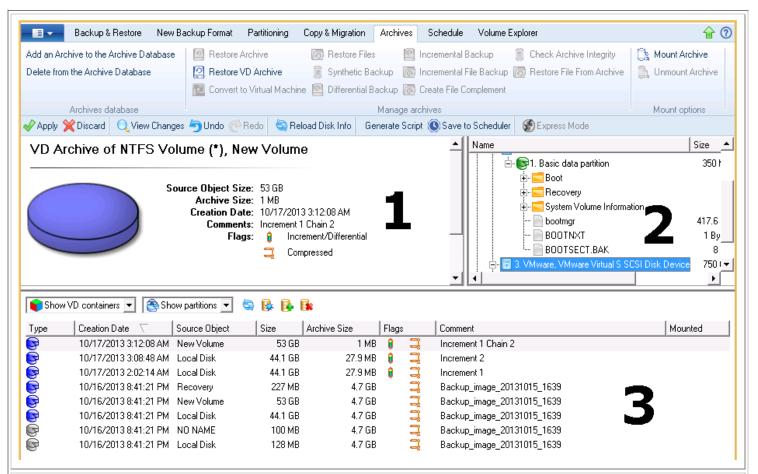
The next page (i.e. What to restore) displays detailed information about the contents of the archive.

			Resto	o <mark>re Wizar</mark> d					?
What to	restore								
Please s	elect one of the ob	ject(s) to restore							
Name				Туре		File system	Size	Used	T
🚊 - 🗐	Basic MBR Hard D	isk 1 (VMware,	VMware	Internal Hard Dis	k Drive		500 GB		-
	- 🕞 New Volume (B	E:)		Primary		NTFS	92.4 GB	41.6 MB	}
. į	- 🔄 NEW VOLUMI	E (F:)		Primary		FAT32	20.7 GB	80 KB	}
. į	SNEW VOLUMI			Primary		Linux Ext2	29.1 GB	512.9 MB	}
	Sew Volume			Primary		Apple HFS	22.9 GB	14.7 MB	}
Archiv	e Details	Name:							
Archiv	e Details								
Archiv	e Details	Volume label:	NEW VOL	LUME	Totalo		D		
Archiv	e Details	Volume label: File system:	NEW VOL Linux Ext2	LUME	Total s		-		
Archiv	e Details	Volume label:	NEW VOL Linux Ext2	LUME		ize: 29.1 G Dace: 28.6 G	-		
	e Details	Volume label: File system: Used space:	NEW VOL Linux Ext2 512.9 MB	LUME		oace: 28.6 G	B	29.1 GB	

If you want to restore the image contents, click the Next button. In order to cancel, click the Cancel button.

## **Using the Archive Database**

To open the Archive Database, click the **Archives** tab on the Ribbon Panel. The database window can be conditionally subdivided into several sections that differ in their purpose and functionality:



1. Properties Panel that displays properties of the selected image.

2. <u>Volume Explorer</u> that enables to access the selected image as a regular folder to explorer its contents or to retrieve certain files.

3. Archive List that displays a list of images contained in the Archive Database (if any). Besides the program provides all the necessary functionality to manage backup images in the database (add, delete, mount, refresh, etc.).

All panels offer a synchronized layout and are separated by vertical and horizontal expandable sliders, allowing the user to customize the screen layout.

# **Data Backup and Rescue**

In this chapter you will find all the information necessary to establish a reliable data protection system.

#### **Creating Backup Images**

Depending on a type of information you need to protect and the way this information should be processed, the program offers a number of handy backup wizards. To make your job with the program as easy and convenient as possible, all backup wizards share similar work algorithm. By going through steps of the wizard, you configure all the necessary settings to launch the backup operation. To minimize the possibility of making any mistake, the wizard provides auxiliary information on every single option. Moreover you can get an in-depth description to any setting, control, or field of the wizard just by clicking the hint button and then the object you need.

58

#### Smart Backup Wizard Startup

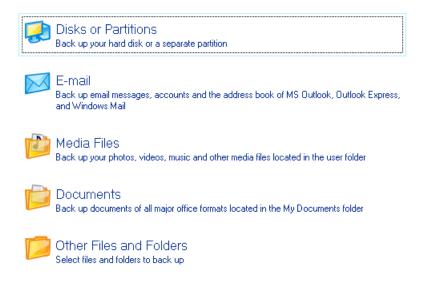
• Click the Backup & Restore tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Smart Backup.

There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

#### Smart Backup Wizard Setup

The wizard offers the following steps to accomplish the backup operation:

• The object to back up. Click on a section you find answering to your task.



- Disk or Partitions to create a sector-based backup of the whole disk system, or only separate partitions;
- E-mail to create a file-based backup of e-mail databases, accounts and address books of MS Outlook, MS Express, and Windows Mail;
- **Media Files** to create a file-based backup of all media files (photo, video, music, etc) stored in the My Documents folder;
- Documents to create a file-based backup of all office documents stored in the My Documents folder;
- Other Files and Folders to create a file-based backup of any files and folders.

8

If selecting Disk or Partitions or Other Files and Folders you will need to specify more exactly the object of operation. To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Backup</u> <u>Scenarios</u> chapter.

Name and location of the resulted image. Provide a file name for the new image and its exact location. The
program automatically offers an easy to understand name containing the date and the time of the archive
creation, which can anyway be modified.

Select a folder where archive should be placed and specify archive name. Archive name will be used as a sub-folder where backup data files will be stored.

Archive location: E:\arc_test\			4	×	2
Name			Size	e	Date
🗄 🔜 My Computer					
🗄 🗄 Local Disk (C:)					
💼 📴 New Volume (E:)					
I III NEW VOLUME (F:) IIII RecoveryMedia (G:)					
H• In necoverymedia (d.)     H• In necoverymedia (d.)					
Archive details					
Archive name: arc_test		1			
Estimated archive size:	2.40				
Estimated archive \$126;	2 MB				
Space available on backup destination:	92.4 GB				
L					

The program automatically calculates size of the future archive and informs the user about space available on the selected destination.

• Archive Comment. You can add some additional description to the archive that will later help to distinguish it from the others.

Please enter a short comment to describe the archive	
No comment	

#### Result

After the backup operation is completed you receive an image of the selected object. This image is placed into the specified destination, its features defined by the wizard.

#### Available operation scenarios:

- Backing up a hard disk or partition to the Backup Capsule
- Backing up a hard disk or partition to external media (CD/DVD)
- Backing up a hard disk or partition to a network drive
- Backing up files to an FTP/SFTP server
- Backing up a dual boot Mac to an external USB drive
- Backing up files to a local mounted/unmounted (without drive letter assigned) partition
- Creating a differential to a full partition backup
- Creating a sector increment to a full partition backup
- <u>Creating a file increment to a full partition backup</u>
- Creating an increment to a full file backup

- Creating a cyclic partition backup
- Merging a full partition backup with one of its differentials

## **Restoring System and Data**

The program includes a convenient and reliable restore wizard. With its help you can restore all types of backup images created with the program. It provides easy to understand instructions to configure and perform all the necessary settings. Moreover you can get an in-depth description to any setting, control, or field of the wizard just by clicking the hint button and then the object you need.

#### Startup

• Click the Backup & Restore tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Restore.



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

#### Setup

The wizard offers the following steps to accomplish the restore operation:

• A backup image to be restored. The Browse for Archive page enables to find a backup image you need.

By clicking the **Switch to Archive List View** link, you can see a list of images contained in the Archive Database (if any).

Туре	Creation Date 🛛 🗸	Source Object	Si:
P	10/10/2013 7:18:58 AM	File-level Archive	
_	10/10/2013 7:18:24 AM	File-level Archive	
Ð	10/10/2013 7:11:42 AM	Basic MBR Hard Disk 3 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	
Ð	10/10/2013 7:08:11 AM	Basic MBR Hard Disk 3 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	
	10/10/2013 7:00:47 AM	File-level Archive	
	10/10/2013 6:55:43 AM	File-level Archive	
	10/10/2013 6:54:26 AM	File-level Archive	
	10/10/2013 6:48:07 AM	File-level Archive	-
3	10/10/2013 2:17:49 AM	New Volume (G:)	
3	10/10/2013 2:17:19 AM	New Volume (G:)	
3	10/9/2013 11:29:07 PM	Local Disk (C:)	4
-	10/9/2013 11:22:19 PM	File-level Archive	
-	10/9/2013 11:17:38 PM	File-level Archive	5.
•			١
witch to F	File View		_
	File <u>D</u> etails		
Total size	—	date: 10/10/2013 7:18:58 AM	
Arabina	size: 119 Bytes		
	-	<b>N</b> I	
Commen	<u>iti</u>	[No comment is available]	
File:		C:/arc_101013141850711/FL000000000000000000/archive.pfi	

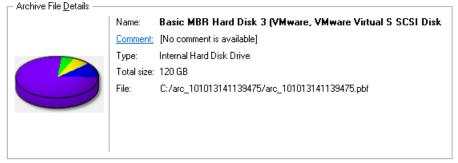
To get a clear-cut picture on properties of the required image, just click on it and the section below will (i.e. Archive File Details) display a short description.



To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

By clicking the **Switch to File View** link, you can find the required image in the browser-like window. The section below (i.e. Archive File Details) will also display a short description of the selected image.

lame	Size Date	
庄 - 👑 arc_091013125156058	10/9/2013 1	1:17:27 PM
🗄 - 📙 arc_091013131559760	10/9/2013 1	10:37:14 PM
庄 - 퉲 arc_091013133756622	10/9/2013 6	5:38:02 AM
🗄 - <u>]]</u> arc_091013140817551	10/10/2013	7:00:26 AM
🗄 - <u>]]</u> arc_091013140825801	10/10/2013	7:00:44 AM
🗄 - <u>]]</u> arc_101013053218496	10/9/2013 1	10:32:29 PM
🗄 - <u>]]</u> arc_101013061434390	10/9/2013 1	11:14:51 PM
🗄 - 📙 arc_101013062903344	10/9/2013 1	11:53:11 PM
🕀 🔐 arc_101013091536750	10/10/2013	2:15:43 AM
🕀 🔐 arc_101013091716250	10/10/2013	2:17:49 AM
🕀 🔐 arc_101013140759053	10/10/2013	7:08:19 AM
🕂 🛺 arc_101013141139475	10/10/2013	7:11:52 AM
<mark></mark> arc_101013141139475.pbf	264.5 KB 10/10/2013	7:11:52 AM



Moreover, on this page you've got the possibility to create new folders, delete existing files/folders or map network drives by clicking the appropriate buttons.

#### To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

#### **File Backup Restore**

• **Data to restore**. You've got the option to restore not only the entire archive, but separate items of it (the so called selective restore functionality) by marking checkboxes next to the data items you need.

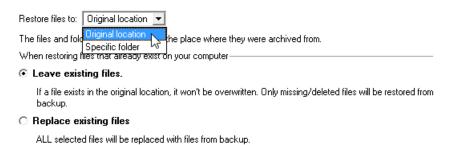
Click the check box next to any file or folder you want to restore from

Vame	Туре	Size
	File Level Archive	589.5 KB (603,660 Byte:
<u>⊢</u> . ▼ <u></u>	7	
 ⊨· ▼ ⊆ C:		
🚊 🗾 🔤 arc_091013140825801		
	File	576 KI
🦾 🗹 📄 arc_091013140825801.pfm	File	1.5 K

To continue, click Next

Data size to restore: 589.5 KB

• A place to restore. From the pull-down list you can choose whether to restore contents of the backup image to its original location or specify some other one.



Besides if you select the Original location option, you can additionally define whether to replace already existing files during the restore operation (good for recovering presumably corrupted files) or leave them intact (good for recovering accidentally deleted files).

#### **Sector Backup Restore**

• **Data to restore.** You've got the option to restore not only the entire archive, but separate items of it (the so called selective restore functionality) by marking checkboxes next to the data items you need.

Please select one of the object(s) to restore:

Name		Туре	File system	Size	Used
🖮 🖬 Basic MBR Hard Disk 3 (VMw	are, VMware	Internal Hard Disk Drive		120 GB	
🗄 - 🥃 New Volume (G:)		Primary	NTFS	14.2 GB	163.8 ME
🗄 😔 NEW VOLUME (E:)		Primary	Linux Ext4	8.3 GB	281.9 ME
🗄 🕞 NEW VOLUME (H:)		Primary	FAT16	8 MB	0 Byte:
🗄 - 🥃 NEW VOLUME (I:)		Primary	FAT32	5.8 GB	4 KE
Archive Details Name: Type: Total size:	Internal Hard	Hard Disk 3 (VMware Disk Drive	e, VMware V	'irtual S S	5CSI Dis
o select where to restore the selected			Data size		



If you select separate files or folders to restore, the wizard will continue working as though you've got to do with a file backup.

• A place to restore. Selecting the destination, please note - all contents on the disk selected for restoring purposes will be deleted during the operation.



To help you get a clear-cut picture of the operation outcome, the program allows inspecting the resulted disk layout.

#### **Restoring Partition:**

• Size of the restored volume and free space before and after it on the disk.

G	eometry Restore Options		
	Please specify the size of the restored partition:	14607 🚔	167 MB - 767990 MB
	Please specify size of free space before the partition:	0 🔺	0 MB - 753383 MB
	Please specify size of free space after the partition:	753383 🜩	0 MB - 753383 MB

• **Drive letter assignment after restore**. The pull-down list contains vacant drive letters that can be associated with the restored partition.

Partition Restore Options		
Assign the following drive letter: E:	•	

• Create new EFI boot entry for destination drive. If you've got to do with a 64-bit Windows configured to the uEFI boot mode, the following option will become available for you to define what instance of Windows OS you'd like to boot from once the operation is over. Anyway you can specify a bootable device at any time through <u>Boot Corrector</u>.

🛒 Create new EFI boot entry for destination drive	
$^{ m W}$ Mark the checkbox to create new EFI boot entry called "Windows Boot Manager" for destination	
hard drive.	



The option above will be available to the user only if the target disk becomes Bootable GPT as a result of the migration process.

#### **Restoring Hard Disk:**

All contents on the disk selected for restoring purposes will be deleted during the operation.

Your hard disk after the changes:

	Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	1
	(Unallocated) 471.4 GB	
Ha	ard Disk Restore Options-	

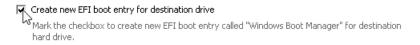
Copy data and resize partitions proportionally

In this mode, the Wizard changes the size of partitions in the same proportion, with keeping intact their relative order. This option can be useful in restoring an image of hard disk to a larger one.

Perform surface test

Set this option if you want the Wizard to perform the surface test on the target hard disk. In this case, if the program finds bad and unreliable sectors it will mark them as unusable ones.

- **Copy data and resize partitions proportionally**. If this option is activated, the program proportionally changes the size of partitions keeping their relative order intact. The option can be useful when restoring to a larger hard disk.
- Perform surface test. Define whether the surface test will be accomplished during the operation or not.
- Create new EFI boot entry for destination drive. If you've got to do with a 64-bit Windows configured to the uEFI boot mode, the following option will become available for you to define what instance of Windows OS you'd like to boot from once the operation is over. Anyway you can specify a bootable device at any time through <u>Boot Corrector</u>.





The option above will be available to the user only if the target disk becomes Bootable GPT as a result of the migration process.

#### Result

The wizard will restore the archived data, and make it available to use in the operating system.



To make Windows bootable on different hardware, please additionally complete the <u>P2P</u> <u>Adjust OS Wizard</u>.

#### Available operation scenarios:

- <u>Restoring a hard disk from the bootable Backup Capsule</u>
- <u>Restoring a system partition from external media (CD/DVD)</u>
- <u>Restoring a system partition from a network drive</u>
- <u>Restoring a system partition from a local drive</u>
- <u>Restoring a dual boot Mac from an external USB drive</u>
- Restoring a file increment
- <u>Restoring a file increment to a partition backup</u>
- <u>Restoring separate files and folders from a backup</u>

# **Copy Tasks**

In this chapter you will find all the information necessary to make a copy of a hard disk or a separate partition.

# **Cloning Hard Disks**

You can clone a hard disk of any file system. During the hard disk copying process, the program moves controlling records of used partitioning scheme, the bootstrap code and on-disk partitions. That's why this operation cannot be substituted by simply copying all on-disk partitions.

# **Copy Hard Disk Wizard**

The Copy Hard Disk Wizard is a traditional-like wizard. By going through its steps, you configure all the necessary settings to launch the copy operation. To minimize the possibility of making any mistake, the wizard provides auxiliary information on every single option. Moreover you can get an in-depth description to any setting, control, or field of the wizard just by clicking the hint button and then the object you need.



You need at least two hard disks to carry out this operation.

#### Startup

• Click the Copy & Migration tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Copy Hard Disk.

Ð

There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

#### Setup

The wizard offers the following steps to accomplish the copy hard disk operation:

• The hard disk to copy. Select a hard disk you want to copy.

On this page, you can choose a hard disk you would like to copy. All partitions from this hard disk will be copied to the destination you will choose on the next page.

	Local Disk (C:)	
499	.6 GB NTFS	
ic MRR (	Hard Diek 1 (VMu	vare, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk De
	· ·	-
2	<b>DA</b> 114.4 GB	🕐 Utils (G:)
Sec. 1		

- 🔽 Use exclude masks
- 🔲 Don't estimate size after excludes

Mark this option to save time, needed for migration with excludes operation, if target hard disk is larger than amount of used space in partitions on source disk. Disks of smaller size will not be used as a possible destinations.

- To choose the destination hard disk, click Next
- Use exclude masks. By default the program doesn't take into account exclude filters set in the <u>Settings</u> dialog. If you need to use them, please mark the checkbox and see existing/specify additional filters on the next page of the wizard.
- **Don't estimate size after excludes**. You can save time by suppressing calculation of the resulted amount of data to copy after using excludes. Please note however, if you use this option, drives that smaller in size than the source disk will be unavailable to use as destination.
- The target hard disk. Select a hard disk (if several) where all data of the source disk will be copied to.

Select a target hard disk. All data from the source hard disk will be copied there. During copy operation, target disk content will be **deleted**.

Basic MBR Hard Disk 0 (VM	Iware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	
Local Disk (C: 499.6 GB NTFS	)	
Basic MBR Hard Disk 2 (VM	Iware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	
New Volume (H:)     312.7 GB NTFS	Backup Capsule 437.2 GB	
Basic MBR Hard Disk 3 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)		
(Unallocated) 119.9 GB	යි Basic MBR Hard Disk 3 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	

• Copy parameters. The wizard enables to specify the following options:

Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

Choose copy options that suit best your task:

#### Copy options:

- 🔲 HDD raw copy
- Partitions raw copy
- Perform incremental copy
- Create new EFI boot entry for destination drive

#### Resize options:

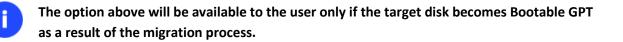
- Remove free blocks between partitions
- Copy data and resize partitions proportionally
- Mark the checkbox to create new EFI boot entry called "Windows Boot Manager" for destination hard drive.

#### **Copy options**

- **HDD** raw copy to copy the hard disk in the sector-by-sector mode, thus ignoring its information structure (e.g. unallocated space or unused sectors of existing partitions will be processed as well). This can help to avoid problems with hidden data created by certain applications or the system administrator. However, it will take more time to accomplish the operation.

- **Partition raw copy** to copy the on-disk partitions in the sector-by-sector mode to successfully process unknown file systems. However it is not recommended to enable this option when working with supported file systems as it takes more time to accomplish the operation.

- **Create new EFI boot entry for destination drive**. If you've got to do with a 64-bit Windows configured to the uEFI boot mode, the following option will become available for you to define what instance of Windows OS you'd like to boot from once the operation is over. Anyway you can specify a bootable device at any time through <u>Boot Corrector</u>.



#### **Resize options**

- **Remove free blocks between partitions** not to keep blocks of free space between partitions on the targeted hard disk.

- **Copy data and resize partitions proportionally** to make the program proportionally change the size of partitions keeping their relative order intact. The option can be useful when upgrading the hard disk to a larger one.

#### Result

After the operation is completed, you receive a fully functional duplicate of the existing hard disk.



To make Windows bootable on different hardware, please additionally complete the <u>P2P</u> <u>Adjust OS Wizard</u>.

#### Available operation scenarios:

Migrating system to a new HDD (up to 2.2TB in size)

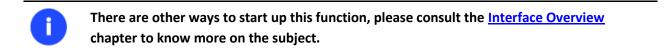
# **Cloning Partitions**

You can duplicate partitions to protect oneself from downtime in case of a system malfunction or for cloning sample partitions. The program enables to duplicate all partition data including files, the exact structure of directories and file system metadata (location of files, security information, access quotas, etc.).

The Copy Partition Wizard will help you copy a partition of any file system. To minimize the possibility of making any mistake, the wizard provides auxiliary information on every single option. Moreover you can get an in-depth description to any setting, control, or field of the wizard just by clicking the hint button and then the object you need.

Startup

• Click the Copy & Migration tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Copy Partition.



#### Setup

The wizard offers the following steps to accomplish the copy partition operation:

• **The partition to copy**. Select a partition you want to copy.

On this page you can choose a volume to copy.

Basic MBR Hard Disk 0 (V	/Mware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	
Uncal Disk (C:) 499.6 GB NTFS		
Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)		
Ocal Disk (E:)     171.8 GB FAT32	Image: Optimized Distribution     Image: Optimized Distribution       Image: Optimized Distribution     Image: Optised Distribution       Image: Opti	

• Destination disk. Select a hard disk with enough unallocated space to perform the operation.

The wizard will create a copy of Local Disk (F:) from Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev).

Estimated size of this volume after selected files and folders will be excluded from copy operation 23.3 GB (25,124,719,616 Bytes).

The copy will be created on Basic MBR Hard Disk 3 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)

Please select where to create a copy:

Basic MBR Hard Disk 3 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)

119.9 GB



The program enables to copy a partition to a block of free space, which is smaller than the partition itself, taking into account only actual amount of data.

**Copy parameters**. The wizard enables to specify the following options:

70

Your hard disk after changes:

Basic MBR Hard Disk 3 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	
Where to place a copy Please specify the size of the new partition: 23962 ♣ <b>76 MB - 122,879 MB</b> .	
Please specify size of the space before the partition: 0 🔮 0 MB - 122,803 MB.	
Please specify size of free space after the partition: 98917 🚔 0 MB - 122,802 MB.	

- Partition size. Define the size (in Mb) of the copied partition.

- **Free space before**. Define the position (in Mb) of the copied partition relative to the beginning of the available range of disk space.

- **Free space after**. Define the amount of trailing free space (in Mb) at the end of the available range of disk space.

Partition size and position may also be defined by using the drag-and-drop technique. To do that, just carry out the required operation on the Disk Map.

- **Create new EFI boot entry for destination drive**. If you've got to do with a 64-bit Windows configured to the uEFI boot mode, the following option will become available for you to define what instance of Windows OS you'd like to boot from once the operation is over. Anyway you can specify a bootable device at any time through <u>Boot Corrector</u>.



The option above will be available to the user only if the target disk becomes Bootable GPT as a result of the migration process.

## Result

After the operation is completed you receive a fully functional duplicate of the existing partition.



To make Windows bootable on different hardware, please additionally complete the <u>P2P</u> <u>Adjust OS Wizard</u>.

#### **Partition Management**

In this chapter you will find all the information necessary to carry out partitioning operations supported by the program.

#### **Basic Partitioning Operations**

Here you can learn how to accomplish basic partitioning operations (create, format, delete).

#### **Creating Partitions**

The program provides the ability to create a new partition within a block of un-partitioned space.

# Restrictions

- 1. Do not use the Create Partition function in order to undelete the last deleted partition.
- 2. The program allows creating new partitions only within blocks of un-partitioned space. It cannot convert a free space on an existing partition to a new partition.
- 3. The program cannot create new partitions on Dynamic Disks.

# **Dialog Startup**

- 1. Select a block of free space on the Disk Map;
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select **Create Partition**.



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

#### **Dialog Setup**

Initially the program suggests some consistent values for all parameters. In most cases, you can just press the Yes button to confirm the operation.

Are you sure you want to create a new partition on disk 3? You are about to create a new partition in <b>(Unallocated)</b> , <b>119.9 GB</b> area. Please select size, position and file system of the new partition.		
Basic MBR Hard Disk 3 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)		
Image: Wew Volume (H:)       114.7 GB NTFS		
Create new partition as:		
Please specify new partition size: 117546 🌩 8 MB - 122,879 MB		
Please specify size of free space before the partition: 🛛 2551 🚔 0 MB - 122,870 MB		
Please specify size of free space after the partition: 🛛 🛛 🔁 0 MB - 122,870 MB		
Please select file system for new partition: NTFS		
Please enter new volume label: New Volume		
Please specify drive letter:		
More options     Yes No		

- **Define whether the partition will be Primary, Extended or Logical**. You can choose the desired partition type from the pull-down list. As a matter of fact, the available alternatives fundamentally depend on the selected block of free space within the Logical free space, only Logical partitions can be created; Within the Primary free space, both Primary partitions or the Extended Partition can be created.
- **Partition Size**. Define the size (in Mb) of the new partition.

- Free space before. Define the position (in Mb) of the new partition relative to the beginning of the block of free space.
- Free space after. Define the amount of trailing free space (in Mb) at the end of the new partition.

Partition size and position may also be defined by using the drag-and-drop technique. To do that, just carry out the required operation on the Disk Map. The virtual operations are to be available.

- **File system for new partition**. From the pull-down list select a file system the newly created partition will be formatted to, otherwise the partition will remain unformatted (so that it will not be ready to use).
- Volume label. Enter a label for the selected partition in this textual field. It is an irrelevant parameter usually
  used for drive identification.
- **Drive letter assignment**. The pull-down list contains vacant drive letters that can be associated with the newly formatted partition.

In addition, there is the possibility to make further detailed settings (although the default values will do in most cases). To activate the advance mode, you need to click the More options button at the foot of the dialog page. Depending on the chosen file system, the following options become available:

✓ Use OS built in format routine
Please select number of sectors per cluster:

Restore defaults

- Use OS built-in routine. Mark the option to restrict the available values according to the used OS.
- The amount of sectors per cluster. Define the Cluster Size for the formatted partition with this spinner control.



Number of available options depends on the selected file system type.

#### Result

After the operation is completed you receive a fully functional partition.

# **Formatting Partitions**

Any partition should contain some file system to be used for keeping data. The process of installing a file system is commonly known as formatting. A huge variety of file systems have been developed these days.

#### Supported File Systems

The program provides the ability to format partitions of the following file systems:

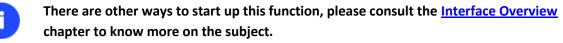
- FAT12 & FAT16
- FAT32

Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

- HFS+
- NTFS
- Ext2
- Ext3
- Ext4
- Linux Swap v. 2

# **Dialog Startup**

- 1. Select a partition on the Disk Map;
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Format Partition.



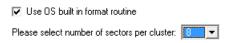
# **Dialog Setup**

Initially the program suggests some consistent values for all parameters. In most cases, you can just press the Format button to confirm the operation.

Are you sure you want to format volume (F:)? You are about to format volume (F:) New Yolume, NTFS. Your computer may no longer boot or work correctly.					
Please select new file system: FAT16   Please enter new volume label: New Volume					
More options     Format     No					

- **File system**. From the pull-down list select the desired file system type. In fact, the program displays only those file systems that can correctly be placed to the selected partition, taking its capacity into account.
- Volume label. Enter a label for the selected partition in this textual field. It is an irrelevant parameter usually used for drive identification.

In addition, there is the possibility to make further detailed settings (although the default values will do in most cases). To activate the advance mode, you need to click the More options button at the foot of the dialog page. Depending on the chosen file system, the following options become available:



#### Restore defaults

- Use OS built-in routine. Mark the checkbox to restrict the available values according to the used OS.
- The amount of sectors per cluster. Define the Cluster Size for the formatted partition with this spinner control.



Number of available options depends on the selected file system type.

# Result

After the operation is completed you receive a fully functional partition formatted to the specified file system.

# **Deleting Partitions**

# **Dialog Startup**

In order to start the operation you should take the following steps:

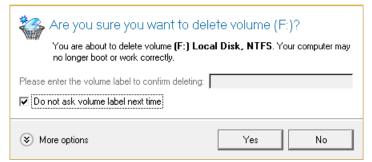
- 1. Select a partition on the Disk Map;
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Create **Delete Partition**.



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

# **Dialog Setup**

Initially the program suggests you just to remove references to the selected partition from the Partition Table.



- Enter the volume label to confirm deleting. To confirm deletion of the selected partition, enter its Volume Label. The current volume label is displayed above.
- Do not ask volume label next time. Mark the option to inhibit confirmation next time you start the dialog.

# Result

By default, the operation takes only a fraction of a second. However, the program waits until Windows completes the modification of the disk layout.

# **Advanced Partitioning Operations**

Here you can learn how to accomplish advanced partitioning operations.

# **Undeleting Partitions**

When simply deleting a partition (without additional wiping) disk management software only removes references to it in the Partition Table, thus leaving the possibility to recover it later.

The program enables to find and recover these partitions. A restored partition will be fully functional, as long as other partitions were not created, moved or exceeded the disk space occupied by that partition. That is why the program offers this function only for blocks of free space.

The operation can be accomplished with the Undelete Partition Wizard.

#### Startup

• Click the Partitioning tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Undelete Partitions.

There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

#### Setup

The wizard offers the following steps to accomplish the undelete partition operation:

• Free blocks to scan for lost partitions. Choose a free block from a tree-like list of available hard disks.

Click the check box next to any hard disk drive or free block you want to examine

Name	Туре
🗄 🖳 My Computer	My Computer
📄 🔄 🗹 📴 Basic MBR Hard Disk 4 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	Internal Hard D
🖉 🕞 (Unallocated)	Free space
	<u>)</u>
The summary size of fragment(s) to analyze is 7.9 GB.	

• Search method. By default, the wizard selects the fastest search method for your operating system. In most cases that will do to find any accidentally deleted partition. However if you're under Windows XP for instance (the Conventional Search option is selected), but the deleted partition you're looking for has been created with the Disk Management utility under Vista, the wizard won't be able to find this partition, unless you manually select the appropriate option (Quick Search for Partitions Created by Vista or Later OS). Moreover if the wizard still fails to find the partition you need, you can select the Thorough Search option to scan every single sector in the specified search area to get the most accurate results.

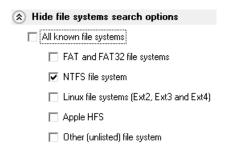
#### Choose how to look for the deleted partitions:

- $\bigcirc$  Quick search for partitions, created by Vista or later OS
- Conventional search
- C Thorough search
- Show file systems search options



To know more on the available search methods, please use the context sensitive hint system.

• File system filter. By default, the wizard will search for all known file systems. However, by clicking on the appropriate option on the second page of the wizard, you can specify only those file systems you need.



To begin search, click **Next** 

• A partition to undelete (if several). By default, the program searches records of any deleted partition ever existed on the selected block of free space. So you can get several partitions to choose from.

Search	deleted partition	is from sector: Ox	:0000000000000080	1 to sector 0x0000000000ffffff	
The following par	titions have beer	n found:			
File system	Туре	Capacity	Used Space	% Used	
SNTFS	Primary	7.9 GB	38.9 MB		0

Stop search

Most likely the required partition will be found first. If so, you may abort the search operation by pressing the Stop search button.

# Result

After the operation is completed you receive a fully functional partition.

# **Changing Partition Attributes**

This chapter explains how you can change partition attributes (Active flag, Hidden flag, Volume Label, etc.).

# Mark Partition Active/Inactive

The program enables to set an active/inactive flag for primary partitions of a hard disk. By default, an operating system will boot only if its partition is active or bootable.

In order to mark a partition active/inactive you should take the following steps:

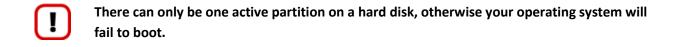
- 1. Select a primary partition on the Disk Map.
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select **Mark Partition as Active/Inactive**.



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.



3. The operation will be performed immediately after confirmation.



# Hide/Unhide Partition

The program allows you to hide/unhide primary and logical partitions. By default, an operating system does not mount hidden partitions, thus preventing access to their contents.

In order to hide/unhide a partition you should take the following steps:

- 1. Select a partition on the Disk Map.
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Hide/Unhide Partition.



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

3. The operation will be performed immediately after confirmation.



It is strongly recommended not to hide the system partition. Otherwise your operating system will fail to boot.

# Set Label of a Partition

The Partition Label is a small textual field (up to 11 characters) that is located in the partition's boot sector. It is detectable by any partitioning tool and is used for notification purposes only.

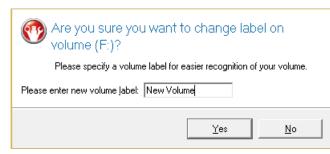
In order to change a partition label you should take the following steps:

- 1. Select a partition on the Disk Map.
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Change Volume Label.



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

3. Enter a label for the selected partition.



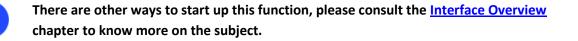
4. The operation will be performed immediately after confirmation.

# **Change Partition ID**

Partition ID is a file system identifier. It is saved in the Partition Table and is used to quickly detect a partition of the supported type. By manually changing its value, you can manipulate accessibility of partitions.

In order to change a partition ID you should take the following steps:

- 1. Select a partition on the Disk Map.
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Change Partition ID...



3. Set a new ID for the selected partition.

Are you sure you want to change system ID of the partition (F:)?
Current system ID is <b>0x07 NTFS, ExFAT, ReFS</b> . Changing system ID might prevent some operating systems from working with the partition.
Please select predefined ID from the list:
0x07 NTFS, ExFAT, ReFS
C Please enter ID manually:
07 🚖
Yes No

- **Predefined ID**. Select from the pull-down list the required ID.
- Enter ID manually. With the spinner control set the required ID value. It has to be a 1-2 digit hexadecimal number.
- 4. The operation will be performed immediately after confirmation.

# Change Serial Number of a Partition

FAT16, FAT32, and NTFS file systems include the Serial Number parameter. A partition's serial number is saved in the boot sector. Its value is generated while formatting.

The program enables to modify the serial number parameter for FAT16, FAT32, or NTFS partitions without reformatting.

In order to change a serial number you should take the following steps:

1. Select a partition on the Disk Map.

2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Change Serial Number.

8

There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

3. Enter a new serial number for the selected partition. It should contain 8 hexadecimal figures (0..9 or A..F). The operation cannot proceed until you enter all 8 symbols.

Are you sure you want to change serial number of volume (F:)?				
Your computer may no longer boot or work correctly.				
Please enter new serial number in hexadecimal format:				
7E44-D513-44D4-CED1				
Yes No				

4. The operation will be performed immediately after confirmation.

# **Hard Disk Management**

In this chapter you will find all the information necessary to carry hard disk operations supported by the program.

#### **Converting Dynamic MBR to Basic**

The program allows you to convert a dynamic MBR disk containing simple volumes into a basic one while keeping its contents intact.

In order to convert a dynamic MBR disk into basic you should take the following steps:

- 1. Select a dynamic MBR disk containing simple volumes on the Disk Map.
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Convert to Basic...
- 3. Set the required number of primary partitions if necessary. According to the DOS partitioning scheme a hard disk can have up to four Primary partitions. If there is an Extended partition on the disk, only three primary partitions are allowed. That is why if a dynamic disk contains several simple volumes the program enables to choose the number of primary partitions. The rest of them if any will automatically be converted to logical disks within the Extended partition.

	ore than four simple volumes, the first three of them will become primary partition: be converted to the logical ones.
e hard disk after conve	art:
Basic MBR Hard D	isk 3 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)
New Volume (	[H:]
119.9 GB NTFS	
	disk can have no more than 1 primary partitions. primary partitions the basic disk should have:

The program can only process dynamic disks containing solid simple volumes (without extension).

# **Converting GPT to Basic MBR**

The program allows you to convert a basic or a dynamic GPT disk containing simple volumes into a basic MBR disk while keeping its contents intact.

In order to convert a basic or a dynamic GPT disk into a basic MBR disk you should take the following steps:

- 1. Select a basic or a dynamic GPT disk containing simple volumes on the Disk Map.
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select **Convert to Basic MBR Hard Disk...**
- 3. Set the required number of primary partitions if necessary. According to the DOS partitioning scheme a hard disk can have up to four Primary partitions. If there is an Extended partition on the disk, only three primary partitions are allowed. That is why if a GPT disk contains several volumes the program enables to choose the number of primary partitions. The rest of them if any will automatically be converted to logical disks within the Extended partition.

Convert the basic GPT hard disk to a basic MBR hard disk? If there are more than four volumes on the disk, only the first three may become primary, and the rest - logical.
The hard disk after convert:
Basic MBR Hard Disk 3 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)
New Volume (H:) 119.8 GB NTFS
The resulted hard disk should have at least 1 primary partition(s). Please select how many primary partitions you need: [김 출]
Convert No



The program can only process dynamic GPT disks containing solid simple volumes (without extension).

# **Converting Basic MBR to GPT**

The program allows you to easily convert a basic MBR disk into a basic GPT disk while keeping its contents intact. The operation is quite safe for the on-disk data, but you should know that only 64-bit Windows OSes since Vista are able to boot from this type of disks. So if you've got a 32-bit Windows OS accommodated on a disk you'd like to convert to GPT, it won't start up after the operation is over.

In order to convert a basic MBR disk to a basic GPT you should take the following steps:

- 1. Select a basic MBR hard disk on the Disk Map.
- Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Hard Disk > Convert to GPT hard disk.

•	Are you sure you'd like to convert Basic MBR Ha (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev) to G Please Note! Despite the fact that all on-disk contents remain intact dur operation, your OS may no longer boot correctly, for Windows XP 32-bit does not support GPT disks.	ing the
	Yes	No

3. The operation will be performed immediately after confirmation.



The program can only convert basic MBR disks.

# **Updating MBR**

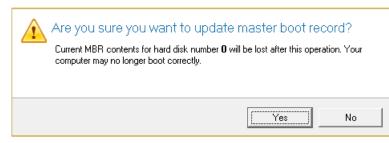
The program enables to overwrite the current bootable code in the MBR (Master Boot Record) by the standard bootstrap code. This can help to repair a corrupted bootable code of a hard disk resulted from a boot virus attack or a malfunction of boot management software.

In order to update MBR of a hard disk you should take the following steps:

- 1. Select a hard disk on the Disk Map.
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Update MBR.



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.



3. The operation will be performed immediately after confirmation.

# **Changing Primary Slot**

Different operating systems apply different approaches to enumeration of the primary partitions.

# In Linux:

In Linux, every partition has a special symbolic name that encodes a hard disk containing a partition, and a partition itself. Partitions are addressed and accessed by using their symbolic names. Symbolic names are automatically generated by Linux in accordance with the order of hard disks in BIOS and the order of partition records in the Partition Table. Thus changing enumeration of the primary partitions can lead to changing of paths to some important resources.

# In DOS:

The last versions of MS-DOS use a rather sophisticated algorithm for a drive letter assignment. A drive letter, which is assigned to a partition, depends on the order of records in the Partition Table. Thus changing enumeration of the primary partitions affects the drive letters assignment. In early versions of MS-DOS, it could even lead to the unavailability of a partition.

The program provides the ability to change enumeration of the primary partitions. This feature will allow you to fix problems concerning an inappropriate order of partitions.

In order to modify enumeration of the primary partitions you should take the following steps:

- 1. Select a hard disk on the Disk Map.
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Change Primary Slot.



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

You ar	e about to change prima	ary slots order on <b>E</b>	primary slots order? Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 Iev). Your computer may no
Slot No	Object type	File System	Volume label
0	Primary	FAT32	NEW VOLUME
1	Primary	NTFS	New Volume
2 3	Primary Primary	Linux Ext3 Linux Swap2	NEW VOLUME [No label]
		New Volume	
	Total size:	3.6 GB	File system: NTFS
	Used space:	38.8 MB	Free space: 3.6 GB
	Start sector:	5640192	End sector: 13273087
			Yes No

- 3. In the opened dialog you can see the current enumeration of the primary partitions of the selected hard disk in the Partition Table. To help you distinguish partitions from one another, the program provides the following parameters for every partition:
  - Slot
  - Volume
  - Partition type
  - File system
  - Partition size
  - Volume label

There are two buttons on the right to move the selected partition up and down within the primary part of the Partition Table.

4. The operation will be performed immediately after confirmation.

# **Task Scheduling**

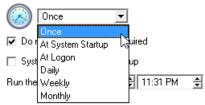
Automation of operations can really help you out when you've got to accomplish certain routine operations on a regular basis as it enables to execute them without your involvement while optimizing your computer's work-load.

# **Setting a Timetable**

Thanks to the embedded Scheduler, you can set a timetable for execution of any operation. It has two categories for time settings (these correspond to appropriate items in the Schedule type menu):

- Initiating the operation by an event:
  - One time only (i.e. the Once item)
  - When the system starts (i.e. the At System Startup item)
  - When the user logs on (i.e. the At Logon item).
- Initiating the operation periodically (i.e. Daily, Weekly, Monthly).

Please specify how and when would you like to perform the task



You need to select one of the variants. Depending on your choice, the scheduler displays a form that enables to set a timetable.

Please specify ho	ow and when v	vould you li	ke to perfor	m the task:	
	<b>•</b>	]			
🔽 Do not reboo	t if reboot is rea	quired			
🔲 System shutd	lown after bacl	kup			
Start the task on:	10/09/2013	3 🖨 at 🛛	2:00 AM	* *	
Every	1	÷ W	veek(s)		
on:	🔽 Monday	🔲 Tueso	day 🔲 W	'ednesday	🔲 Thursday
	🔲 Friday	🔲 Satur	day 🔲 Su	unday	
🔲 Do not run th	e task after:	Г	10/09/2010	3	

Specify user name and password.



To run the task in the log-off mode, please specify administering login info by following the appropriate link in the left lower corner of the page.

The Shutdown System on Complete option enables to automatically switch off the computer on the successful accomplishment of the operation.

#### **Managing Tasks**

All scheduled tasks are placed in a separate list, which can be retrieved by clicking the Schedule tab on the Ribbon Panel:

I	Scheduled Tasks 🔄 🚼	k 🛤						
I	Name	Script	When to Run	I	Next Run Time	Last Run Time	Last Result	Account
I	Backup of Local Disk (C:)	scr_231013132945163.psl	At 6:29:00 A	M on 472372013	1			w630went64en
I			3	Run Now				
I				Edit Script				
I				Delete Task				
I				Refresh List				
				Properties				

On every task you can get in-depth information, including:

- The task name
- The full path to the generated script of the task

- Scheduled time of launch
- Statistics on the last launch
- Scheduled time of the next launch
- Used account information
- Comments to the task

To easily manage tasks, the program enables to arrange them according to a certain characteristic just by clicking on the required property.

This feature can be particularly beneficial when the Scheduled Tasks list contains too many items.

You can also enable/disable, rename, delete, refresh or modify properties of the selected task.

# **Task Editor**

With the Task Editor you can easily modify properties of scheduled tasks. To do that, you should take the following steps:

- 1. Select a task on the Scheduled Tasks list.
- 2. Click the Properties button on the Scheduled Tasks list.



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

General Schedule		1
Program: C:\Program Files\Paragon Software\program\scripts.exe		
Script: C:/Program Files/Paragon Software/scripts/scr_231013		
	<u>E</u> dit	<u>B</u> rowse
Comments: Backup has been scheduled: 10/23/2013 6:29:45 AM		
✓ Enabled		
ОК	Apply	Cancel

- 3. In the opened dialog window you can see two tabs General and Schedule. Click the General tab to modify:
  - Full path to the macro-command program-interpreter, which describes the scheduled task;

- Command line for starting the interpreter (i.e. the task described in macro-language)
- Comments referring to the task
- The option of enabling/disabling the task.

By clicking the Schedule tab you can modify the task timetable.

In order to apply the changes, you need to click the Apply button at the foot of the dialog.

#### **Creating a Scheduled Task**

You can set a timetable for execution of any operation. For backup and copy operations the program offers handy wizards, while all the others can be scheduled with the Save to Scheduler dialog.

To create a scheduled task you should take the following steps:

- 1. Make sure the virtual mode of execution is enabled;
- 2. Carry out with the program all operations you need to schedule;
- Call the Save to Scheduler dialog by clicking its icon on the <u>Virtual Operations Bar</u>;

Schedule virtual operations? All virtual operations you have made will be saved to the scheduler. No operations will be				
Task name: Scheduled Task				
Please specify how and when would you like to perform the task:				
Do not reboot if it is required				
Shutdown system after carrying out the tasks				
Start the task on: 10/13/2013 🛫 at 12:00 AM 👙				
Every 1 🚔 day(s)				
☐ Do not run the task after: 10/13/2013 🚖				
Specify user name and password.				
Discard all operations on close     Yes     No				

- 4. In the opened dialog enter the required task name and specify the task timetable;
- 5. The operation will be performed immediately after confirmation.

This command is unavailable if there are no operations on the List of Pending Operations.

# **Scripting**

The program actions can also be represented in form of a script. The script describes the appropriate operation with macro-language commands. There is an interpreter utility - SCRIPTS.exe, which is included in the program installation package. This utility works in the unattended mode, which enables to automate operations.

#### Startup

You have no need to write a script since the program has a convenient interface for such a task. In order to generate a script on the base of the entered parameters of the required operation, you should take the following steps:

- 1. Make sure the virtual mode of execution is enabled;
- 2. Carry out with the program all operations you need to be scripted;
- 3. Call the Generate Script dialog by clicking its icon on the Virtual Operations Bar.

#### Setup

Initially the program suggests some consistent values for all parameters. In most cases, you can just press the Generate button to confirm the operation.

Generate script? All virtual operations you have made will be written to the script. No operations will be applied.
Please specify a name for the task script file:
script_141013_055711792.psl
✓ Add to <u>T</u> ask List
Write a script comment here:
More options <u>G</u> enerate <u>No</u>

- Script file name and location. By default, the program offers to add the script to the Task List with a name containing its creation date and time. Unmark the Add to Task List checkbox to define an exact location and a filename for the script file. The default file extension that is reserved for scripting files is .psl, which however can be modified.
- Add to Task List. By default, the script will be automatically added to corresponding list. If necessary, add a small comment to it.

In addition, there is the possibility to make further detailed settings (although the default values will do in most cases). To activate the advance mode, you need to click the More options button at the foot of the dialog page, so you will be able to define:

Please select script generation options: Allow to interact with the user Turn this option off if you do not want to get confirmation dialogs when the script is being carried out.

Commit after each operation

Turn this option on to ensure the changes will be committed after each operation.

Check for errors after each operation

Turn this option on to make script interpreter to check the result of each operation.

🔲 Use disk ID

Turn this option on to use a disk ID instead of an index in the script.

- Interaction with the user. Mark the option to pause the script interpreter during the execution to prompt the user's confirmation or other input. Otherwise the program will not stop using default values for parameters if needed.
- Commit after each operation. Mark the option to commit changes after each operation.

Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

- **Check for errors after each operation**. Mark the option to insert a special code in script, which checks the status of the last executed operation and stops the script processing if there are errors of any kind.
- **Discard all operations on close**. Mark the option to empty the List of Pending Operations after generating the script.

#### Result

After the operation is completed you receive a new script file. It is placed into the specified destination, its features defined in the dialog.

# This command is unavailable if there are no operations on the List of Pending Operations. To learn more about scripts please consult the Paragon Scripting Language manual.

# **Extra Functionality**

This chapter describes the supplementary functionality available in the program.

# **View Partition/Hard Disk Properties**

The program enables to obtain in-depth information on the properties of hard disks and partitions. Besides the general information, such as capacity, used space or file system type it provides the possibility to get info on hard disk geometry, cluster size, exact partition location, etc.

To get properties on a partition/hard disk, please do the following:

- 1. Choose a partition/hard disk on the Disk Map.
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Properties...



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

Volume label:	[No label]	
File system:	NTFS	
Туре:	Primary	
Capacity:	499.6 GB	
	536,501,813,248 Bytes	
	1,047,855,104 Sectors	
Used by data:	12.6 GB (2%)	
	13,630,279,680 Bytes	
	26,621,640 Sectors	
Free space:	486.9 GB (98%)	
	522,871,533,568 Bytes	
	1,021,233,464 Sectors	

In the opened dialog information will be grouped according to its properties, thus by clicking tabs you can get information you need.

# **Volume Explorer**

Volume Explorer is a special tool to browse and export contents of the local mounted/unmounted volumes formatted to FAT16, FAT32, NTFS, Ext2FS, Ext3FS, Ext4FS, reFS file systems. Besides it enables to access Paragon backups as regular folders to explorer their contents or to retrieve certain files.

Click the Volume Explorer tab on the Ribbon Panel to open it:

Name	Size	Modified	
🗄 🔜 Drives			
🛓 💼 - 📴 A: /			
🛓 🖶 📴 C:/			
🗄 - 📴 Z:/ - POOL			
🗄 - 🔜 Hard Disks			
🗄 🗐 1. VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Device	e 500 GB		
🗄 🕞 1. Primary NTFS	350 MB		
🖃 🕞 2. Primary NTFS (C:)	499.6 GB		
🗄 🚾 \$Recycle.Bin		9/3/2013 1:49:11 PM	
🕀 🚾 Documents and Settings		8/22/2013 6:45:52 AM	
🗄 🚾 PerfLogs		8/22/2013 7:22:35 AM	
🗄 🚾 Program Files		10/22/2013 4:01:15 AM	
🕀 🚾 Program Files (x86)		9/3/2013 1:54:48 PM	
🕀 🚾 ProgramData		10/22/2013 7:00:32 AM	
🗄 🚾 System Volume Information 🛛 😽	Export	10/22/2013 4:00:53 AM	
🕀 🔂 Users	Refresh	9/3/2013 1:48:22 PM	
🖶 🔂 Windows 🛛 🚽		<sup>J</sup> 9/3/2013 9:43:00 AM	
···· 📄 bootmgr	417.6 KB	8/21/2013 9:31:45 PM	
📄 BOOTN×T	1 Bytes	6/18/2013 4:18:29 AM	
📄 pagefile.sys	1.1 GB	10/22/2013 3:37:45 AM	
🤐 📄 swapfile.sys	256 MB	10/22/2013 3:37:46 AM	
🚊 🗐 2. VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Device	e 500 GB		
🛓 🗐 3. VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Device	e 750 GB		
🗄 🗐 4. VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Device	e 120 GB		
🗄 - 🔙 Virtual Drives			

Call a context menu for the selected file/folder by the right mouse click to export it to some other location (local or network drive, etc.).

٢	Select a destination folder for the export operation	on ? ×
Look in:	🔄 Local Disk (C:) 💽 🔯 🎇 🧟 Address: 🖸	
Disk Drives	Name Control Disk (C:) Control Disk (C:) Control Program Files Control Users Control Users Control Users Control DVD Drive (D:) Control DVD Dr	Date 8/22/2013 12:50:47 AM 10/14/2013 10:48:56 PM 9/3/2013 3:24:45 PM 9/3/2013 10:55:03 AM
		DK Cancel

Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

90

#### Available operation scenarios:

<u>Restoring separate files and folders from a backup</u>

Ô

The current version of the program does not enable to access pVHD images and file archives with Volume Explorer.

# **File Transfer Wizard**

File Transfer Wizard is designed to make such operations as copying of separate files/directories or burning of them to CD/DVD as easy and convenient as possible. It may be of particular use in case of a system malfunction, caused either by a virus attack or files corruption, in order to get the system back on track again. Besides it provides access to Paragon backups as regular folders to browse through their contents or copy required files.

#### Startup

• Click Tool Button, then select File Transfer Wizard.



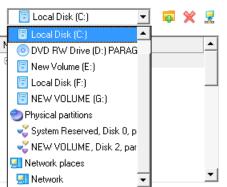
There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

#### Setup

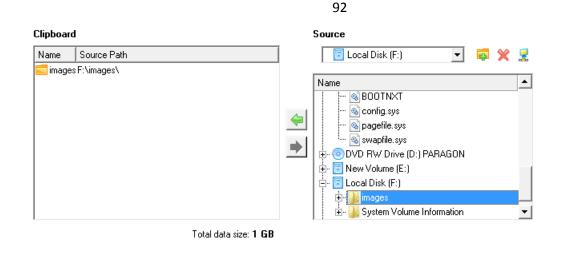
The wizard offers the following steps to accomplish the transfer operation:

• Place to look for files/directories. Select a source disk from the pull-down list in the left pane of the page. The program enables to process both mounted and unmounted (without drive letter assigned) partitions. Besides it is possible to map a network drive.





• **Object(s) of operation**. Choose files/directories you want to copy and place them to Clipboard by pressing the Add button. To delete a file/directory from the Clipboard, select it in the Clipboard pane and press the Remove button. You can also create a new folder, rename or irreversibly delete existing files/directories of the left pane by pressing the appropriate buttons.



Files/directories deleted from the Clipboard remain intact on source disks.

• **Destination to store the object(s)**. The File Transfer Wizard allows copying data to local or network drives, to physical partitions (without drive letters assigned), or burning them to CD/DVDs. Choose the way the data will be stored.

```
There are several ways the Wizard can store your data. Please select how would you like to save the data:
```

- ⊙ Save data to local/network drives.
- C Save data to physical partitions.
- O Burn the data to CD, DVD or BD.
- **Revision of changes**. The Transfer Summary page provides structurally divided information on all the actions made in the wizard. Check the changes and come back to any step of the wizard (if necessary) by following the required hyperlink.

Please overview the transfer options. You can return to the corresponding page and change the options by clicking on title hyperlinks.

Objects to transfer	
Object(s) selected:	1
Total data size:	1 GB (1,078,198,272 Bytes)
Transfer destination	
Destination path:	C:\
Space available on destination:	485.9 GB (521,742,041,088 Bytes)
Overwrite existing files:	No

#### Result

After the operation is completed the required data will be placed into the specified destination.

#### Available operation scenarios:

- <u>Copying of data from the corrupted system disk to another hard disk</u>
- Burning of data from the corrupted system disk to CD/DVD
- Copying of data from a backup to the corrupted system partition
- <u>Restoring separate files and folders from a backup</u>

#### **Mount Partition**

The program enables to assign or remove drive letters of existing formatted partitions.

Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

# Assign Drive Letter

In order to mount a partition you should take the following steps:

- 1. Select a partition on the Disk Map.
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Assign Drive Letter...

There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

3. Specify a drive letter for the selected partition. Initially the program suggests some consistent value for this parameter. So you may just press the Yes button to confirm the operation.

Assign a drive letter? This allows access to the volume by using the drive letter assigned. The assignment is not recommended if the volume contains a file system not supported by your operating system.
Assign the following drive letter: F:
Yes No

However you can manually define the required letter by selecting it from the pull-down list of available drive letters.

4. The operation will be performed immediately after confirmation.

# **Remove Drive Letter**

In order to un-mount a partition you should take the following steps:

- 1. Select a partition on the Disk Map.
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Remove Drive Letter.

There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

3. The operation will be performed immediately after confirmation.

Modifying drive letter of the system partition will result in inability to boot the operating system.

After having processed partitions with installed software, some programs may not run properly.

# **Mount Archive**

The program provides the ability to assign a drive letter to a partition backup image. As a result of the operation you will get a new read-only partition in the system to easily browse through its contents and copy the required information even with the standard Windows tools.

#### Assign Drive Letter

Before you start mounting backup images, please study the following limitations:

- Archives can be mounted at the partition-level only, thus please use the 'Show partitions' option to view all partitions inside backup images;
- Archives will only be mounted for the current session and won't be available after the system restart;
- Archives containing Windows Storage Spaces are not supported;
- Archives containing ReFS partitions are not supported;
- pVHD archives located on physical (unmounted) partitions or in the backup capsule cannot be mounted;
- pVHD encrypted archives are not supported;
- pVHD LVM/LDM archives are not supported.

In order to mount an archive you should take the following steps:

- 1. Select a backup image in the Archive Database.
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Mount the Selected Archive.

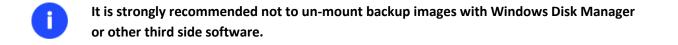
There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

3. Specify a drive letter for the selected backup image. Initially the program suggests some consistent value for this parameter. So you may just press the Yes button to confirm the operation.



However you can manually define the required letter by selecting it from the pull-down list of available drive letters.

4. The operation will be performed immediately after confirmation.



#### **Remove Drive Letter**

In order to un-mount a backup image you should take the following steps:

- 1. Select a backup image in the Archive Database.
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Unmount the Selected Archive.



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

3. The operation will be performed immediately after confirmation.

# **Test Surface**

The program enables to test surface of existing partitions and blocks of free space for bad or unstable sectors. If found any it automatically marks them unusable in the file system metadata, thus minimizing the risk of data loss.

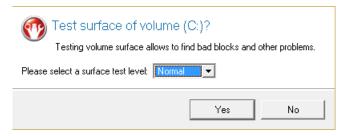
In order to start the surface test you should take the following steps:

- 1. Select a partition or a block of free space on the Disk Map.
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Test Surface...



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

3. From the pull-down list choose the level of the surface check.



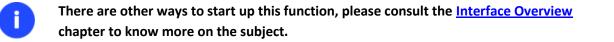
4. The operation will be performed immediately after confirmation.

# **Check File System Integrity**

The program allows you to check integrity of a file system. It can be used to detect possible file system errors before performing any operation on a partition.

To start the system integrity check you should take the following steps:

- 1. Select a partition on the Disk Map.
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Check File System Integrity



Check volume (C:) [No label], NTFS for errors? Please note that check operation needs exclusive access to the volume. You may be asked to restart your computer to complete the operation.
Check disk options:          Scan for and attempt recovery of bad sectors         Automatically fix file system errors
Yes No

3. The operation will be performed immediately after confirmation.

# **Check Archive Integrity**

The program provides the ability to check integrity of a backup image. The function allows distinguishing between valid and corrupted images before using them. The Check Archive Integrity Wizard will help you do that.

#### Startup

• Click the **Backup & Restore** tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select **Check Archive Integrity**.

There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

#### Setup

The wizard offers the following steps to accomplish the operation:

• An archive to verify. The Browse for Archive page enables to find a backup image you need.

By clicking the Switch to Archive List View link, you can see a list of images contained in the Archive Database (if any).

💽 Show archives 🔹 🔻	1	🔏 Show all	•	6	₿	<b>-</b>	B:
---------------------	---	------------	---	---	---	----------	----

Туре	Creation Date 🛛 🗸	Source Object	Size	Archive Size	Flags	Comm	Mounted
8	10/14/2013 2:20:44 AM	Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	500 GB	18.7 MB	Ę	No	1×
9	10/14/2013 2:20:15 AM	New Volume (F:)	499.9 GB	18.5 MB	3	No	1*
-	10/14/2013 2:18:38 AM	File-level Archive	4.2 MB	23 KB			
	10/14/2013 2:18:19 AM	File-level Archive	4.2 MB	23 KB	Ę		1×
<b>S</b>	10/9/2013 10:26:43 PM	Local Disk (C:)	499.6 GB	3.8 GB	70	No	1×
B	10/9/2013 10:26:07 PM	Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	500 GB	14.4 MB	7	No	1×

To get a clear-cut picture on properties of the required image, just click on it and the section below will (i.e. Archive File Details) display a short description.



To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

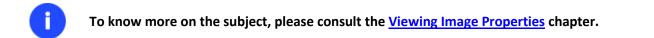
By clicking the Switch to File View link, you can find the required image in the browser-like window. The section below (i.e. Archive File Details) will also display a short description of the selected image.

Look in: New Volume (E:) Size Date Name Size Date 10/16/2013 10:14:35 PM 264.5 KB 10/16/2013 10:14:36 PM arc\_new.pfi 2.2 MB 10/16/2013 10:14:36 PM 2.2 MB 10/16/2013 10:14:36 PM 5 MB 10/16/2013 10:14:24 PM

	[ Marror	Dusin MDD Used Disk 1 O/Muses Minuse Vistual C	CCCI Diak Davi
- Ar	chive File Details		
Swit	ch to Archive List View		
	0102_000	C7 140	10 10 10010 10 14 00 04
	🔊 arc_new_0102p.pfm	4.1 KB	10/16/2013 10:14:31 PM
	arc_new_0102p.000	28.6 MB	10/16/2013 10:14:32 PM
	🔊 arc_new_0101p.pfm	1.2 KB	10/16/2013 10:14:26 PM
	arc_new_0101p.000	1.2 MB	10/16/2013 10:14:26 PM
	···· 🔊 arc_new_0100p.pfm	1.6 KB	10/16/2013 10:14:24 PM
		6 MB	10/16/2013 10:14:24 PM

Name:	Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)
Comment:	My hdd 1
Type:	Internal Hard Disk Drive
Total size:	500 GB
File:	E:/arc_new/arc_new.pbf

Moreover, on this page you've got the possibility to create new folders, delete existing files/folders or map network drives by clicking the appropriate buttons.



# Result

After the operation is completed you can see results of the check.

# **Check Recovery Discs**

You've got the ability to check whether backup media created with the program is 100 percent error-free and ready to use. The Check Recovery Disc Wizard will help you do that.

# Startup

• Click Tool Button, then select Check Recovery Discs...



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

# Startup

The wizard offers the following steps to accomplish the operation:

- **CD/DVD drive**. Select from the pull-down list of available CD/DVD devices the required drive to use during the operation.

Drive: NECVMWar VMware IDE CDR10
 Eject the disc after check

- Set whether to eject the disk after the operation is completed or not.

۰

After the operation is completed you can see results of the check.

# **Edit/View Sectors**

With the built-in Edit/View Sectors tool the program enables to view/edit sectors on existing partitions/hard disks providing the possibility to directly access and modify sectors, save and restore sectors from specified files, navigate through the system metadata, etc.

In order to edit/view sectors of a hard disk/partition you should take the following steps:

- 1. Select a hard disk/partition on the Disk Map.
- 2. Call a context menu for the selected object by the right mouse click, then select Edit/View Sectors.

There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

ease select sector number: 0		▲ ▼	•			44		$\mathbf{b}$		(		•	6	Ś	>	5	C	p 😰
0x0000000 0000000	33	<u></u>	8e	40	be	00	70	8e	<u></u>	8e	48	he	0.0	7c	bf	00	33	.Đ¼. .À.Ø
0x00000000 00000010														ь9				üó¤Ph
0x0000000 00000020	bd	be	07	80	7e	00	00	7c	OЪ	Of	85	0e	01	83	c5	10		~
0x00000000 0000030	e2	f1	cd	18	88	56	00	55	c6	46	11	05	c6	46	10	00		Í.V.UÆF.
0x00000000 0000040	Ь4	41	ьь	aa	55	$^{\rm cd}$	13	5d	72	Of	81	fЪ	55	aa	75	09	´Α>	⊳ªUÍ.]r
0x00000000 0000050	f 7	$_{\rm c1}$	01	00	74	03	fe	46	10	66	60	80	7e	10	00	74	÷Á	t.þF.f`
0x00000000 0000060	26	66	68	00	00	00	00	66	ff	76	08	68	00	00	68	00	&fł	nfÿv.
0x00000000 00000070	7c	68	01	00	68	10	00	Ь4	42	8a	56	00	8Ъ	f 4	cd	13		h'B.V
0x00000000 0000080	9f	83	$_{\rm C4}$	10	9e	eb	14	Ъ8	01	02	ьь	00	7c	8a	56	00	1	Áë.,»
0x00000000 0000090	8a	76	01	8a	4e	02	8a	6e	03	$^{\rm cd}$	13	66	61	73	1c	fe	. v.	N.n.Í.
0x000000 000000A0	4e	11	75	0c	80	7e	00	80	Of	84	8a	00	Ъ2	80	eb	84	Ν.ι	1~
0x00000000 000000BC	55	32	e4	8a	56	00	$^{\rm cd}$	13	5d	eb	9e	81	3e	fe	7d	55	U2à	á.V.Í.]ë.
0x0000000 00000000	aa	75	6e	ff	76	00	e8	8d	00	75	17	fa	Ъ0	d1	e6	64	ªur	nÿv.èu.
0x00000000 00000000	e8	83	00	Ъ0	df	е6	60	e8	7c	00	Ъ0	ff	e6	64	e8	75	è.	*Bæ`è .*
0x00000000 000000E0	00	fЬ	Ъ8	00	ьь	$\operatorname{cd}$	1a	66	23	c0	75	ЗЪ	66	81	fЬ	54	. û ,	,.»Í.f#Àu
0x00000000 000000FC	43	50	41	75	32	81	f 9	02	01	72	2c	66	68	07	ЪЪ	00	CPA	Au2.ù.r,
0x00000000 00000100	00	66	68	00	02	00	00	66	68	08	00	00	00	66	53	66	. f ł	nfh
0x00000000 00000110	53	66	55	66	68	00	00	00	00	66	68	00	7c	00	00	66	Sfl	Jfhfh
0x00000000 00000120	61	68	00	00	07	$\operatorname{cd}$	1a	5a	32	f 6	ea	00	7c	00	00	cd	ah	Í.Z2öê
0x00000000 00000130	18	aO	Ъ7	07	eb	08	a0	Ъ6	07	eb	03	a0	Ъ5	07	32	e4		∙.ë. ¶.ë.
0x00000000 00000140	05	00	07	8Ъ	f 0	ac	3c	00	74	09	ЪЪ	07	00	Ь4	0e	cd		ð¬<.t.≫
0x00000000 00000150	10	eb	f 2	f 4	$^{\rm eb}$	fd	2Ъ	с9	e4	64	eb	00	24	02	e0	f 8	. ëč	bôëý+Éädë
0x00000000 00000160	24	02	с3	49	6e	76	61	6c	69	64	20	70	61	72	74	69		AInvalid
0x00000000 00000170		69	6f	6e	20	74	61	62	6c	65	00	45	72	72	6f	72		on table.
0x00000000 00000180		6c												61		69		oading op
0x00000000 00000190		67			79									73		6e	-	system.M
0x00000000 000001A0		20	6f	70	65										73		-	operating
0x00000000 000001BC	65		00	00	00		7Ъ				fЪ				80			c{.rLû
	21	0.0	07	L _	10	<u>э</u> -	00	00	00	00	00	40	0-	00	00	L_		Ĭ 🕨



Careless use of the Edit Sectors function may result in the irreversible data corruption.

#### **Send Log Files**

The program enables to simplify the procedure of sending support requests to the Paragon Support Team. In case of having difficulties with handling the program, you, with the help of this very function, can address the company support engineers and provide them with all the information they need such as the disk layout, performed operations, etc. in order to tackle the encountered problem. Information of that kind is stored in Log files.

In order to send log files to the Paragon Support Team you should take the following steps:

- 1. Click Tool Button, then select Send Log Files;
- 2. Provide a customer name and a product serial number;
- 3. Give a detailed description on the encountered problem.

Send log files. Please enter short description of your problem and send log files to support.
Customer Name:
John Smith
Serial Number:
09fde-654ec-a49fc-7daf8-237a2
Content of inquiry:
Help!
<u> </u>
Send Cancel

By clicking the Send button the built-in mail client will generate a template request with attached compressed log files and then send it to the Paragon Support Team.

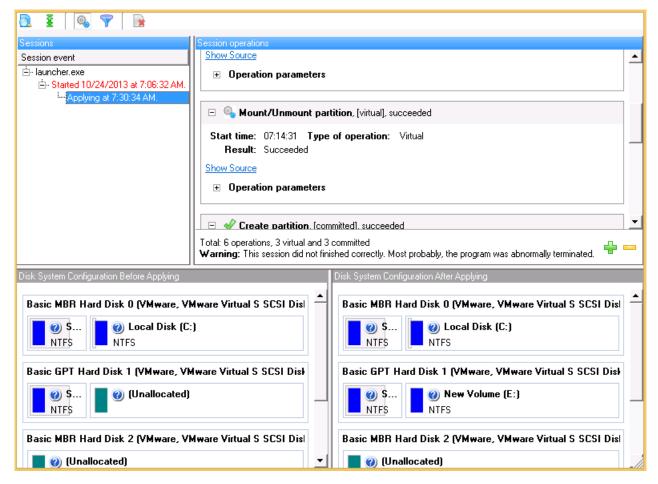
Log files do not contain any confidential information on the operating system settings or the user documents.

The Send Log Files function is only available when outgoing mail server (SMTP) and the user e-mail address are properly set. To learn more about it please consult the <u>Settings</u> <u>Overview chapter</u>.

#### **View Logs**

With a handy dialog you can study logs on any operation carried by the program. To make this job as easy as possible, all the information is structurally divided, besides there is the possibility to see the disk layout before and after an operation, what is very convenient.

In order to view logs on carried out operations, click **Tool Button**, then select **View Log Files**.



# **Typical Scenarios**

This chapter lists a number of the most frequently used scenarios that may be accomplished with the program. You can find here useful recommendations and descriptions of operations.

# **Backup Scenarios**

# **Creating the Backup Capsule**

- 1. Click the **Backup & Restore** tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select **Manage Capsule**.
- 2. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 3. Select a place on the disk where the backup capsule will be created. It can be created as a primary partition or as a logical drive within an extended partition. It can be inserted into any place on the hard disk: at the end (preferable), at the beginning or somewhere in the middle between other partitions.

On this page you can select a hard disk where a backup capsule will be created as well as the relative position of the capsule on the hard disk.

		٠
Basic GPT Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)		
Local Disk (C:)		
499.4 GB NTFS		
Basic GPT Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)		
(Unallocated)		
499.8 GB		
Basic GPT Hard Disk 2 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)		
(Unallocated)		
749.8 GB		
- 143.0 GB		
Basic GPT Hard Disk 3 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)		
		_
🔲 📃 🚳 (Unallocated)		•
Jse the buttons to move the marker. Backup capsule will be created where the marker is.	4	4
se the buttons to move the marker. Backup capsule will be cleated where the marker is.		7

By default, the program allows the user to create the backup capsule only as the last primary or as the last logical drive within the extended partition. However, by activating the advance mode on the first page of the wizard you can remove this restriction that in its turn might result in some boot problems.

4. Activate the bootable recovery environment if needed. With its help you will get the choice to boot directly from the backup capsule for maintenance or recovery purposes every time you start up the computer.

If you're attempting to embed our bootable environment to a GPT disk (just our case), you will be prompted to provide a path to an .ISO image of the WinPE recovery environment, which can be prepared either with Paragon's Recovery Media Builder or Boot Media Builder, available in the My Account section (<u>www.paragon-software.com/my-account/</u>). If you have to do with an MBR disk, no preliminary actions are required, as in this case there will be used a Linux-based image, which is included to the product by default.

Allow to start recovery system from backup capsule	
Bootable backup capsule on selected GPT hard disk can be based on WinPE RCD only. Please bui (.ISO file) either with the Boot Media Builder add-on or Recovery Media Builder add-on supplied with specify its location:	
C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\dest.iso	Browse
Time to display the backup capsule startup message: 5 seconds 🚖	
Startup message preview:	
Paragon Backup Capsule	

O Do not allow to start recovery system from backup capsule



Creation of the bootable backup capsule on an MBR disk will result in overwriting MBR, thus in case of having a third side boot manager, it will be removed. To avoid that you can save the current MBR with the help of the <u>Edit/View Sectors</u> tool.

#### The backup capsule can only be bootable if it is located on the bootable device.

 Preview the resulted hard disk layout and change size of the backup capsule if necessary by moving the corresponding slider or manually entering the required value. It will be created at the expense of free space of the selected disk.

Your hard disk before creation of backup capsule:
Basic GPT Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)
Local Disk (C:) 499.4 GB NTFS
Your hard disk after creation of backup capsule:
Basic GPT Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)
Image: Construction     Image: Construction       Imag
Backup capsule - current size is 244.1 GB
Min capsule size: 340 MB — 250013 MB 🛨 💌 Max capsule size: 488.3 GB

There is no restriction on the size of the backup capsule, merely depending on the available space of the hard disk and the capacity needed for the backup.

If the wizard cannot find enough free space in one block, it will redistribute free space, joining all free space blocks together into one united block and moving partitions if necessary. If the total amount of free space is still not enough, it is possible to split a fragment of space from one of the existing partitions, thus resizing it.

If the partition is locked and cannot be resized, the wizard makes the system reboot to create the backup capsule and automatically boots the system again. The rebooting mechanism is different for different versions of Windows.

6. Start the operation (by clicking the Next button) or return to correct the settings.

After the operation is completed you can place backup archives into the created backup capsule.



This operation can also be accomplished with our recovery media.

#### Backing up a hard disk or partition to the Backup Capsule

To back up an entire hard disk or a separate partition and then place the resulted image into the backup capsule, please do the following:

1. <u>Create the backup capsule</u> with the Manage Backup Capsule Wizard.

2. Click the **Backup & Restore** tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select **Smart Backup**.

a

There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

- 3. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 4. On the What to back up page, select **Disk or Partitions** to create a sector-based backup of the whole disk system, or only separate partitions.

$\mathbf{\mathbf{R}}$	Disks or Partitions Back up your hard disk or a separate partition
$\ge$	E-mail Back up email messages, accounts and the address book of MS Outlook, Outlook Express, and Windows Mail
J	Media Files Back up your photos, videos, music and other media files located in the user folder
P	Documents Back up documents of all major office formats located in the My Documents folder
_	

Dther Files and Folders Select files and folders

5. On the next page, mark the appropriate option opposite a hard disk's name or a partition's name depending on the chosen task.

 $\operatorname{Clic} \underline{k}$  the check box next to any hard disk drive or partition you want to back up

Name	Туре	File system	Size	U: 🔺
🗄 - 🛃 My Computer	My Computer			
🚊 🗹 🔄 Basic MBR Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	Internal Hard Disk Drive		500 GB	
🖕 🥅 🥌 First Hard Disk Track	First Track		0 Bytes	
🦾 🥅 📴 Master Boot Record	MBR		0 Bytes	
🔽 🕞 Local Disk	Primary	NTFS	350 MB	25
🦾 🔽 🤤Local Disk (C:)	Primary	NTFS	280.3 GB	E
🗄 🔲 🔲 Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	Internal Hard Disk Drive		500 GB	
🖕 🥅 🚰 First Hard Disk Track	First Track		0 Bytes	
🦾 🥅 📴 Master Boot Record	MBR		0 Bytes	
🔽 💽 Local Disk (F:)	Primary	NTFS	499.6 GB	
🦾 🥅 😏 NEW VOLUME	Primary	Linux Ext4	350 MB	8
🚊 🖓 🔲 📴 Basic MBR Hard Disk 2 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	Internal Hard Disk Drive		750 GB	
🖕 🥅 🚰 First Hard Disk Track	First Track		0 Bytes	
🔄 🧵 🦾 🥅 🕞 Master Boot Record	MBR		0 Bytes	_ <b>_</b> _
The size of objects to back up: <b>280.3 GB</b> Estimated archive size <b>48.3 GB</b>				



You've got the option to modify the default backup settings by marking the appropriate checkbox on this page.

By default the program will take into account exclude filters set in the <u>Settings</u> dialog.

#### 104

#### 6. On the Backup Destination page, select the Save data to the Backup Capsule option.

There are several ways the Wizard can store your data. Please select how would you like to save the archive:

- Save data to the Backup Capsule
- C Save data to local/network drives.
- C Save data to physical partitions.
- C Save data to FTP locations.
- O Burn the data to CD, DVD or BD.

#### 7. Edit the archive name if necessary.

Please specify the archive name. Archive name will be used as a sub-folder where backup data files will be stored.

┌─ Archive details ───		
Archive name:	arc_091013135006539	
Estimated archive siz	ze: 5.5 GB	
Space available on b	backup destination: 10.7 GB	

Please take into account values of the parameters Estimated archive size and Space available on backup destination - if the archive size exceeds the available space, delete outdated backups from the Backup Capsule or resize it with the Manage Backup Capsule Wizard.

8. Add comments to your backup describing its contents.



9. On the Backup Summary page review all parameters of the operation and modify them if necessary. Click the Next button to start the backup process.



This operation can also be accomplished with our recovery media.

# Backing up a hard disk or partition to external media (CD/DVD)

To back up an entire hard disk or a separate partition and then burn the resulted image to CD/DVD, please do the following:

1. Click the Backup & Restore tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Smart Backup.



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

- 2. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- On the What to back up page, select **Disk or Partitions** to create a sector-based backup of the whole disk system, or only separate partitions.

<b>!</b>	Disks or Partitions Back up your hard disk or a separate partition
	E-mail Back up email messages, accounts and the address book of MS Outlook, Outlook Express, and Windows Mail
	Media Files Back up your photos, videos, music and other media files located in the user folder
	Documents Back up documents of all major office formats located in the My Documents folder



4. On the next page, mark the appropriate option opposite a hard disk's name or a partition's name depending on the chosen task.

Click the check box next to any hard disk drive or partition you want to back up

Name	Туре	File system	Size	U: 🔺
🗄 - 🔜 My Computer	My Computer			
🚊 🖓 🔄 Basic MBR Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	Internal Hard Disk Drive		500 GB	
🚊 🗔 🦳 🊰 First Hard Disk Track	First Track		0 Bytes	
🦾 🥅 🔄 🔄 🔤 Master Boot Record	MBR		0 Bytes	
🔽 🔄 Local Disk	Primary	NTFS	350 MB	25
🛄 🗹 💽 Local Disk (C:)	Primary	NTFS	280.3 GB	E
🚔 🥅 🗐 Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	Internal Hard Disk Drive		500 GB	
🚊 🗍 🧰 First Hard Disk Track	First Track		0 Bytes	
🦾 🥅 📴 Master Boot Record	MBR		0 Bytes	
🥅 💽 Local Disk (F:)	Primary	NTFS	499.6 GB	
🦾 🔲 😏 NEW VOLUME	Primary	Linux Ext4	350 MB	8
📮 🔲 🔄 Basic MBR Hard Disk 2 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	Internal Hard Disk Drive		750 GB	
🖕 🥅 🚰 First Hard Disk Track	First Track		0 Bytes	
▲ Image Contraction International Internati	MBR		0 Bytes	•
The size of objects to back up: <b>280.3 GB</b> Estimated archive size <b>48.3 GB</b>				

You've got the option to modify the default backup settings by marking the appropriate checkbox on this page.

By default the program will take into account exclude filters set in the <u>Settings</u> dialog.

5. On the Backup Destination page, select the **Burn the data to CD or DVD** option.

There are several ways the Wizard can store your data. Please select how would you like to save the archive:

C Save data to the Backup Capsule

- C Save data to local/network drives.
- C Save data to physical partitions.
- C Save data to FTP locations.
- $\odot\,$  Burn the data to CD, DVD or BD.
- 6. Select a recordable device on the list of available CD/DVD devices and edit the archive name, if necessary.

Select a recorder to burn archive images to.

Name		Disc types
NECVMWar VMware IDE CDR10		CD-R/RW; DVD-R/RW; DVD-RAM
ISV CD Burner Emulator		CD-R/RW
ISV DVD Burner Emulator		DVD+R/RW
Archive details		
Archive name: BP091013	(No more than 8 symbols and only in English	ı.)
Estimated archive size: 3,1 GB		
Estimated archive size: 3.1 GB		

# Please take into account the Estimated archive size value. It can give you a hint about the number of CD/DVD discs required for the operation.

7. Add comments to your backup describing its contents.

Please enter a short comment to describe the archive

- No comment
- 8. On the Backup Summary page review all parameters of the operation and modify them if necessary. Click the Next button to start the backup process.



This operation can also be accomplished with our recovery media.

# Backing up a hard disk or partition to a network drive

To back up an entire hard disk or a separate partition and then place the resulted image to a network share, please do the following:

# For PBF images

1. Click the Backup & Restore tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Smart Backup.



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

2. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.

3. On the What to back up page, select **Disk or Partitions** to create a sector-based backup of the whole disk system, or only separate partitions.



4. On the next page, mark the appropriate option opposite a hard disk's name or a partition's name depending on the chosen task.

 $\operatorname{Clic} \underline{k}$  the check box next to any hard disk drive or partition you want to back up

Select files and folders to back up

Name	Туре	File system	Size	U: 🔺
🗄 🖳 My Computer	My Computer			
📄 🚊 🗹 📴 Basic MBR Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	Internal Hard Disk Drive		500 GB	
🚊 🗍 🥌 First Hard Disk Track	First Track		0 Bytes	
🦾 🥅 🥵 Master Boot Record	MBR		0 Bytes	
🔽 🕞 Local Disk	Primary	NTFS	350 MB	25
🛄 🔽 💽 Local Disk (C:)	Primary	NTFS	280.3 GB	E
🚊 🔲 🔄 Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	Internal Hard Disk Drive		500 GB	
🚊 🗍 🥌 First Hard Disk Track	First Track		0 Bytes	
🦾 🥅 🥵 Master Boot Record	MBR		0 Bytes	
🔽 💽 Local Disk (F:)	Primary	NTFS	499.6 GB	
L C SNEW VOLUME	Primary	Linux Ext4	350 MB	8
🚊 🔲 🔄 Basic MBR Hard Disk 2 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	Internal Hard Disk Drive		750 GB	
🚊 🦳 🥌 First Hard Disk Track	First Track		0 Bytes	
🚬 📜 🦾 🥅 😒 Master Boot Record	MBR		0 Bytes	
				•
The size of objects to back up: <b>280.3 GB</b> Estimated archive size <b>48.3 GB</b>				

You've got the option to modify the default backup settings by marking the appropriate checkbox on this page.

By default the program will take into account exclude filters set in the Settings dialog.

#### 5. On the Backup Destination page, select the Save data to local/network drives option.

There are several ways the Wizard can store your data. Please select how would you like to save the archive:

- C Save data to the Backup Capsule
- Save data to physical partitions.
- Save data to <u>FTP</u> locations.
- Burn the data to CD, DVD or BD.

Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

- 6. Map a network disk to place your backup image to:
  - Call the Map Network Drive dialog by clicking the appropriate button;

Select a folder where archive should be placed and specify archive name. Archive name will be used as a sub-folder where backup data files will be stored.

Archive location: C:\ar	re 101013072100201\			T 🙀 🖇	2 👤
Name	0	Map Network Drive	? ×	Size	Date
	Remote location mapping- A network share: Map to drive letter: Z: Make permanent conn				
		ОК	Cancel		

- Click the standard browse button [...] to browse for the required network share or manually enter a path to it;
- Define a letter from the pull-down list of available drive letters;
- Mark the checkbox to make this connection permanent. Otherwise it will only be available for the current Windows session;
- Click the Connect as user button at the foot of the dialog page to specify a user name and password to access the selected network share if necessary.
- 7. Edit the archive name if necessary.

	Please specify the archive name. Archive name will be used as a sub-folder where backup data files will be stored.					
Г	Archive details					
	Archive name: arc_091013135006539					
	Estimated archive size: 5.5 G	В				
	Space available on backup destination: 10.7 GB					



Please take into account values of the parameters Estimated archive size and Space available on backup destination - if the archive size exceeds the available space, another network drive needs to be selected.

8. Add comments to your backup describing its contents.

Please enter a short comment to describe the archive			
1	No comment		

9. On the Backup Summary page review all parameters of the operation and modify them if necessary. Click the Next button to start the backup process.

#### For pVHD images

1. Click the New Backup Format tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Backup to VD.



# There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

- 2. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- Select partitions or entire hard disks you'd like to back up by using Shift or Ctrl to select several objects at once. Click Next to proceed.

Press Shift or Ctrl to select several objects at once.

Basic MBR Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)				
Basic GPT Hard Disk 1 (VMv	are, VMware Virtua	l S SCSI Disk Dev	)	
(Unallocated) 499.9 GB				
Basic MBR Hard Disk 2 (VM) (Unallocated) 749.9 GB	are, VMware Virtua	ıl S SCSI Disk Dev	]	
Basic MBR Hard Disk 3 (VM)	are, VMware Virtua	al S SCSI Disk Dev	·]	
(Unallocated) 119.9 GB				

Note: This option is recommended for advanced users only.

You've got the option to modify the default backup settings by marking the appropriate checkbox on this page.

By default the program will take into account exclude filters set in the <u>Settings</u> dialog.

4. Specify location of the resulted pVHD in the 'Backup destination' section. If you'd like to save it locally, either enter a full path to the target folder in the corresponding field or use the **Browse** button to find it.

[	Backup destination	
	Backup location C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\ _h_	
	Available space 10 GB	

If you're going to save the backup image on a network share, or a physical partition (a partition that doesn't have a drive letter in the system), click on the **Browse** button. In the opened dialog you can see several options:

Look in:	E Local Disk (C:)	💌 📮 💥 🛃
	Address: C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\	Map Network Drive
Disk Drives	Name	Date 🔺
		10/24/2013 7:01:16 AM 8/22/2013 8:22:35 AM
-		10/22/2013 5:01:15 AM
Partitions	E Program Files (x86)	9/3/2013 2:54:48 PM
		9/3/2013 2:48:22 PM
	Administrator	10/29/2013 6:36:23 AM
	.kchmviewer	10/23/2013 7:12:13 AM
	🕀 🚺 Contacts	9/3/2013 2:48:42 PM
	⊕- 🎴 Desktop	10/29/2013 6:45:32 AM
	🗄 🛺 Documents	9/3/2013 2:48:42 PM
	🗄 🔂 Downloads	9/3/2013 2:48:42 PM
	🖶 🍶 Favorites	9/3/2013 2:48:42 PM
	l i i in 🛄 Linka	0/0/0010 0-40-40 MM

- Select **Disk Drives** to use a local disk as backup destination;
- Select Partitions to use a physical partition as backup destination;
- Click on the Map Network Drive icon to map a network share to use it as backup destination (our case).
- 5. To map a network share, please do the following:

Remote location mapping A network share: \\server2\pool\Network Storage Map to drive letter: Z:  Make permanent connection
<u> </u>

- Click the standard browse button [...] to browse for the required network share or manually enter a path to it;
- Define a letter from the pull-down list of available drive letters;
- Mark the checkbox to make this connection permanent. Otherwise it will only be available for the current Windows session;
- Specify a user name and password to access the selected network share if necessary.

Enter network credentials Enter your credentials to connect to: server2
guest  Domain: W630WENT64ENM  Remember my credentials
🐼 Access is denied.
OK Cancel

• Click **OK** when ready.

Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

110

6. Edit the default archive name and description in the 'Archive details' section if necessary. Click Next to proceed.

[	-Image details		٦
	Backup name	Backup_HDD0_20131029_0713	
	Backup description	Backup_image_20131029_0713 6	

7. Click **Finish** to complete the wizard, then apply the pending changes.



This operation can also be accomplished with our recovery media.

#### **Backing up files to an FTP/SFTP server**

With our program you can protect the entire system, separate partitions, or particular files by backing up directly to online storages located on FTP or SFTP servers. Please note however, that due to certain limitations of the network bandwidth, the use of FTP/SFTP locations for storing many GBs of data (OS together with all on-disk data) isn't the best choice, but it's great for personal data, like your documents, email databases, photos, etc.

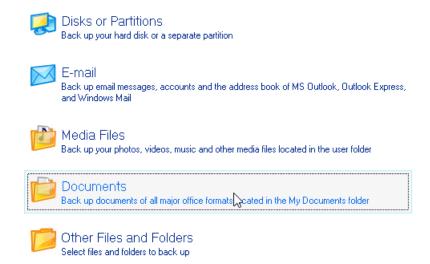
So let's see how to back up all office documents of the My Documents folder to an SFTP server:

1. Click the Backup & Restore tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Smart Backup.

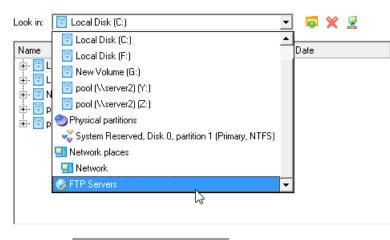


There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

- 2. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- On the What to back up page, select **Documents** to protect all office documents inside the My Documents folder.



4. On the next page, choose **FTP Servers** as backup storage.



Archive name: arc\_101013094249110

5. Click on the **Create an FPT Location** button to set up parameters for the required SFTP location.

Select a folder where archive should be placed and specify archive name. Archive name will be used as a sub-folder where backup data files will be stored.

Archive location:  ftp://		🗌 🍳 🥥	🎯 📮 💥
Name	6) ? ×		Size Date
	Create FTP/SFTP location		,,,,
	Address: idrive.strato.com/  Port: 21		
	Address: Indiversation.com/		
	Login:		
	Name: STRATO HiDrive		
	Connect Cancel		
r ⊢ Archive details			

- Use SFTP connection. Mark the option to connect to the desired SFTP server;
- Address. Type in its address;
- Port. Specify the required port (22 by default);

- **Anonymous login**. Mark the option to set up anonymous connection. Typical username for this type of login is "anonymous";

- Allow Open SSH key-based authentication. If your SFTP provider requires this type of authentication, mark the option to specify public and private keys and a passphrase;

Public key file:	Browse
Private key file:	Browse
Passphrase:	

- Login. Enter a login;

- Password. Enter a password. Click Remember password to save it next time you back up to this location;

- **Name**. By default, the program uses the provided address as the connection name, which can be modified however.

112



You need to check out yourself Windows Firewall or programs of this kind let our program work with the required port (21 for FTP and 22 for SFTP by default).

6. When ready, click the **Connect** button to check out you've got access to the provided location. If yes, you'll get a new item on the list named after this location. By clicking the + icon you can browse it to specify a more exact location for your backup. At this stage you can also edit the default archive name if necessary.

Archive location: [ftp://master.paragon-software.com/!paragon/			×
Name	Size	Date	
🗄- 🤣 STRATO HiDrive(master.paragon-software.com)			
📄 🖶 🚾 2china			
📄 🖶 🚾 2nvidia			
📄 🔂 AST_Press			
🖶 💼 Biglobe			
🛓 💼 Carbonite			
📄 🗄 🖬 🔂 Cisco			
🛓 🖶 💳 Continuum			
🛓 💼 💳 dialogic			
📄 🖶 💳 Drofa			
🖶 💼 Focalbeo_3.4.103			
📙 🚊 🖬			•
- Archive details			
Archive name: arc_111013120552346			

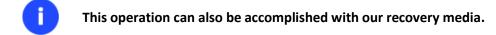
7. Add comments to your backup describing its contents.

Please enter a short comment to describe the archive	
No comment	

8. To prevent unauthorized access to your personal data, we strongly recommend you to password protect your backup.

Protect archive with password	
Please enter a password	
Password:	ENU
Confirm password:	ENU

9. On the Backup Summary page review all parameters of the operation and modify them if necessary. Click the Next button to start the backup process.



### Backing up a dual boot Mac to an external USB drive

To back up a dual boot Mac (Mac OS X and Windows XP/Vista/7/8) and then place the resulted image to an external USB drive, please do the following:

1. Start up the computer from our Linux/DOS recovery media.

Please use Recovery Media Builder or Boot Media Builder to prepare Paragon's recovery environments on CD/DVD, flash, or in an ISO-image. You can get these utilities here:
 www.paragon-software.com/my-account/.
 To automatically boot from the recovery media please make sure the on-board BIOS is set up to boot from CD/USB first.

- 2. Connect an external USB drive to the computer.
- 3. Restart the computer. It will be automatically started up into the Linux recovery environment (**Normal Mode**), since it's the only mode that provides support for Mac computers.
- 4. In the Linux launch menu select **Backup & Recovery**.
- 5. Launch the Backup Wizard by selecting in the Main Menu of the program: Wizards > Backup Wizard.

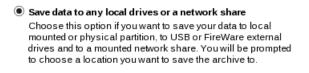
Partition	Wizards Help	
rd Disk 0 (VM) S	Copy Hard Disk One Button Copy Wizard Backup Wizard	
d Disk 1 (VMv	Restore Wizard	
d Disk 2 (VMv	Backup to VD Wizard Incremental Backup to VD Wizard Restore from VD Wizard	
d Disk 3 (VMv	Undelete Partitions Wipe Wizard Express Resize Wizard Split Partition Wizard	
Disk0	File Transfer Wizard Boot Corrector Password Cleaner	0 GB ree Volume lat
rd Disk 0 (Siz Primary Primary	Registry editor Network Configurator Install Windows OS utility	93.1 MB System R 139 GB [No label]

- 6. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 7. On the What to back up page, select your Mac hard disk.

Ba	sic Hard Di	isk 0	~	Mod	el VMware '	Virtual, Size	500 GB			
Ν	Volume	Туре	File Syster	n	Size	Used	Free	Volume label	Active	Hidden
В	Basic Hard	Disk 0 (Size 5	00 GB)							
0	*:	Primary	NTFS	63	350 MB	257 MB	93.1 MB	System Reserv	Yes	Yes
1	*:	Primary	NTFS		500 GB	60.5 GB	439 GB	[No label]	No	No

8. On the Backup Destination page, select the Save data to any local drive or a network share option.

Please select how would you like to save the archive:



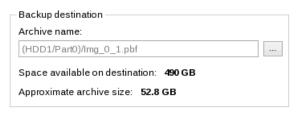
#### O Burn data to CD/DVD/BD

Choose this option if you want the Wizard to burn the archive to CD/DVD/BD. You will be prompted to choose a drive.

9. Select an external USB drive as a backup destination.

	Spe	cify image file to ci	reate	×
Look in:	*:\ (NTFS, 0	) on Disk 1) (UFSD disl	k) 🗸	Ê.
🚞 Documer	01312515605 nts and Settin			^
Drogram	Files (x86)	ation		
🛅 Windows				~
Rename	e (F6)	New folder (F7)	Delete (F8	5)
File name:	Img_D0.pl	of	Sav	/e
File type:	Archive fil	es (*.pbf)	∀ <u>C</u> an	cel
		< <u>B</u> ack	Next >	Cancel

#### 10. Edit the archive name if necessary.



A

Please take into account values of the parameters Estimated archive size and Space available on backup destination - if the archive size exceeds the available space, another drive needs to be selected.

11. Add comments to your backup describing its contents.



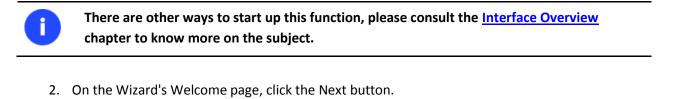
12. On the Backup Summary page review all parameters of the operation and modify them if necessary. Click the Next button to start the backup process.

This operation can also be accomplished under Windows.

## Backing up files to a local mounted/unmounted (without drive letter assigned) partition

To back up required files or folders and then place the resulted image to a local mounted/unmounted drive, please do the following:

1. Click the Backup & Restore tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Smart Backup.



3. On the What to back up page, first take a look at the ready-made backup templates. If none of the options meets you needs (just our case), then select **Other Files and Folders** to create a file-based backup of certain data.



4. On the What folders and files to back up page you can see a list of all partitions (both mounted and unmounted) available in the system. Mark a checkbox opposite a file, folder or even a whole partition to build up contents of the future backup image.

Click the check box next to any file or folder you want to back up

Name		Size	Date	
📃 🕂 🛄 a	rc_091013140825801		10/9/2013 7:08:29 AM	
📃 🗄 🗖 🚺 a	rc_101013053218496		10/9/2013 10:32:29 PM	
📃 🗄 🗌 🛄 a	rc_101013061434390		10/9/2013 11:14:51 PM	
🛓 🗄 🗖 🚺 a	rc_101013062903344		10/9/2013 11:53:11 PM	
🛓 🗄 🗖 🚺 a	rc_101013091536750		10/10/2013 2:15:43 AM	
🛓 🗄 🗌 🚺 a	rc_101013091716250		10/10/2013 2:17:49 AM	
📔 🕴 🥅 🚺 P	PerfLogs		8/22/2013 8:22:35 AM	
📔 🕴 🥅 🚺 P	Program Files		10/9/2013 5:50:43 AM	
📃 🗄 🗖 🚺 P	Program Files (x86)		10/9/2013 11:01:16 PM	
📃 🗄 🗖 🚺 P	ProgramData		10/9/2013 11:01:18 PM	
📃 🗄 🖓 🛄 S	iystem Volume Information		10/9/2013 6:17:05 AM	
🛓 🚊 🗹 <u> </u> U	Isers		9/3/2013 2:48:22 PM	
📃 🗼 🗖 🛛	🕌 Administrator		10/9/2013 10:26:37 PM	_
	🚹 Default		8/22/2013 12:11:25 PM	
. <u>i</u> . [	🗌 퉲 AppData		8/22/2013 8:36:30 AM	
<u>+</u> .[	🗌 퉲 Desktop		8/22/2013 8:36:30 AM	
	🗹 퉬 Documents		8/22/2013 7:45:52 AM	
	🗌 퉬 Downloads		8/22/2013 8:36:30 AM	
	🗌 퉬 Favorites		8/22/2013 8:36:30 AM	
<u>+</u> .[	🗌 🏭 Links		8/22/2013 8:36:30 AM	
<u>.</u>	🔜 🔡 Music		8/22/2013 8:36:30 AM	
	🗌 🏭 Pictures		8/22/2013 8:36:30 AM	-

5. On the Backup Destination page, select a local mounted/unmounted (without drive letter assigned) disk as a backup destination.

Look in: 📳 Local Disk (C:)	📮 🛠 💈	
Name	Date	•
🚊 🖅 📴 Local Disk (C:)		
🖶 🖟 🔐 arc_091013125156058	10/9/2013 11:17:27 PM	
🖶 - 📙 arc_091013131559760	10/9/2013 11:22:08 PM	
🛓 🖶 🔐 arc_091013133756622	10/9/2013 6:38:02 AM	
🗄 - <u>]]</u> arc_091013140817551	10/9/2013 11:08:51 PM	
🗄 📲 🛺 arc_091013140825801	10/9/2013 7:08:29 AM	
🗄 - 퉲 arc_101013053218496	10/9/2013 10:32:29 PM	
🗄 - 퉲 arc_101013061434390	10/9/2013 11:14:51 PM	
🗄 📲 🛺 arc_101013062903344	10/9/2013 11:53:11 PM	
🗄 📲 🛺 arc_101013091536750	10/10/2013 2:15:43 AM	
🗄 📲 🛺 arc_101013091716250	10/10/2013 2:17:49 AM	
🗄 🛄 PerfLogs	8/22/2013 8:22:35 AM	
🗄 📲 🔢 Program Files	10/9/2013 5:50:43 AM	
🗄 📲 🛺 Program Files (x86)	10/9/2013 11:01:16 PM	
🗄 - 🍱 Users	9/3/2013 2:48:22 PM	
🗄 - 🏊 Windows	10/9/2013 11:01:29 PM	
吏 🗐 Local Disk (F:)		
🗄 🗐 New Volume (G:)		
🗄 📴 pool (\\server2) (Y:)		•

6. Edit the archive name if necessary.

Archive name: arc\_101013093650000

7. **Specify include masks**. The program includes a lot of ready-made filters to effectively control contents of your backup images.

Include masks manage files and folders that will be added to the archive. If include mask is specified, all the files that do not conform to the mask will be omitted and will not get into the archive.

C Do not use include masks (all files will be included into the archive)

Ose include masks

	eadable files (44 filters)	•
Add filter	Rename category Delete category	
	Delete filter	
	Delete filter Delete filter	
	Delete filter Delete filter	
*.txt	Delete filter	
	Delete filter Delete filter	
	Delete filter Delete filter	
*.xls	Delete filter	
	Delete filter Delete filter	
	Delete filter Delete filter	•
		-

Add category...

You can also create your own filter by clicking the **Add category...** button.

ស	Create new category	?	×
Name:	[		
Filter:	Enter a mask or file name here	Browse	
Description:	Enter filter description here		
🕕 You car	n use wildcards * and ? to specify the	mask.	
	ОК	Cancel	

- Name. Give to the filter any name you like, but try to use an informative one;
- Filter. Press the Browse button to select files or folders you would like to be included or specify a filter mask by using \* or ? wildcards;
- Description. Add a short description to the filter not to miss it up later.

Click the OK button and you will get a new item on the list of filters. By marking/unmarking a checkbox opposite its name you can choose whether to use it or not.



By setting an include mask, you automatically ignore files that do not match to it, thus they won't be added to the backup image.

8. **Specify exclude masks**. The program includes a lot of ready-made filters to effectively control contents of your backup images.

Exclude masks manage files and folders that will be excluded from archive. Specify exclude masks:

Executable & Installations (8 filters)
Add filter Rename category Delete category
*.dll Delete filter
*.exe Delete filter
*.ocx <u>Delete filter</u>
*.vxd Delete filter
*.cab <u>Delete filter</u>
*.msi <u>Delete filter</u>
*.msp <u>Delete filter</u>
*.drv Delete filter
E F Auxiliary files (18 filters)
Add filter Rename category Delete category
*.bak Delete filter
*.old Delete filter
*.tmp Delete filter
*.temp Delete filter
*.err Delete filter
× I D_I_L_ CI
Add category

9. Add comments to your backup describing its contents.

Please enter a short comment to describe the archive

No comment	

10. To prevent unauthorized access to your personal data, we strongly recommend you to password protect your backup.

Protect archive with password	
Please enter a password	
Password:	ENU
Confirm password:	ENU

11. On the Backup Summary page review all parameters of the operation and modify them if necessary. Click the Next button to start the backup process.



This operation can also be accomplished with our recovery media.

# Creating a differential to a full partition backup

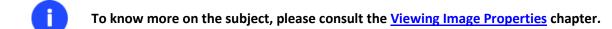
To update an image of the selected partition, please do the following:

- 1. Click the Backup & Restore tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Differential Backup.
- 2. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 3. On the Browse for Archive page, specify the required full (base) partition archive:

• By clicking the **Switch to Archive List View** link, you can see a list of images contained in the Archive Database (if any).

省 Show all	•	S 📴	Ē.		
Туре	Creation Dat	e 🗸	Source Object	Size	Archive Size 🔄 🔺
<b>S</b>	10/9/20131	11:29:07 PM	Local Disk (C:)	477.7 GB	26.7 GB
-	10/9/20131	1:22:19 PM	File-level Archive	24 KB	389 Bytes
	10/9/20131	1:17:38 PM	File-level Archive	589.5 KB	4.9 KB
-	10/9/20131	1:15:18 PM	File-level Archive	293.5 MB	165.5 MB
	10/9/20131	1:09:02 PM	File-level Archive	24 KB	389 Bytes 💌
•					•
Switch to File	View				
– Archive File	e Details ——				
	[	Name:	Local Disk (C:)		
		Comment:	[No comment is ava	ailable]	
		Volume labe	l: [No label]		
(		File system:	NTFS	Total size:	477.7 GB
		Used space	: 32 GB	Free space	: 445.6 GB
		File:	C://arc_1010130	)62903344.pb	ıf

To get a clear-cut picture on properties of the required image, just click on it and the section below will (i.e. Archive File Details) display a short description.



• By clicking the **Switch to File View** link, you can find the required image in the browser-like window. The section below (i.e. Archive File Details) will also display a short description of the selected image.

Look in: 🛛 📴 Local Disk	: (C:)			•	4	×	2	
Name			Size	Date				
🕂 - 퉲 arc_10101306	1434390			10/9/2	2013 11	1:14:5	1 PM	
📄 🖟 퉲 arc_10101306				10/9/2	2013 11	1:53:11	1 PM	
i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	13062903344.p	bf	26.7 GB				- · · ·	
📄 🗄 🕌 PerfLogs				8/22/2	2013 8:	22:35	AM	•
Files of type: Archive file	S							•
Switch to Archive List View								
🖵 Archive File Details ——								
	Name:	Local Disk (C:	:)					
	Comment:	[No comment is	available]					
	Volume label:	[No label]						
	File system:	NTFS	Tota	l size:	477.7	GB		
	Used space:	32 GB	Free	space:	445.6	GB		
	File:	C://arc_10101	13062903	344.pbf				



To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

4. The Archive Content page displays detailed information about the contents of the archive. It includes a full description of properties about the partition. In addition, there is the possibility to modify backup settings. To activate the advance mode, you need to mark the appropriate option at the foot of the page.

Name		Туре	File system	Size	Used
🖳 🗹 🕞 Local Disk	< (C:)	Primary	NTFS	477.7 GB	32 G
Archive Details					
Archive Details	Name:	Local Disk (C:)			
Archive Details	Name: Volume label:				
Archive Details	Volume label:		Total size:	477.7 GB	

🔲 Change backup settings

5. On the Backup Destination page, select where you want to place your backup image.

There are several ways the Wizard can store your data. Please select how would you like to save the archive:

- Save data to the Backup Capsule
- C Save data to local/network drives.
- C Save data to physical partitions.
- C Save data to FTP locations.
- O Burn the data to CD, DVD or BD.
- 6. Edit the archive name if necessary.

Please specify the archive name. Archive name will be used as a sub-folder where backup data files will be stored.

Archive details	arc_091013135006	6539
Estimated archive siz	ze:	5.5 GB
Space available on backup destination:		10.7 GB

Î

Please take into account values of the parameters Estimated archive size and Space available on backup destination - if the archive size exceeds the available space, another drive needs to be selected.

7. Add comments to your backup describing its contents;

Please enter a short comment to describe the archive



8. On the Backup Summary page review all parameters of the operation and modify them if necessary. Click the Next button to start the backup process.

After the operation is completed you receive a differential backup of the selected partition. It is placed into the specified destination (a local or network disk, the Backup Capsule or a CD/DVD disc), its features defined by the wizard.

## Creating a sector increment to pVHD

You're allowed to do several incremental chains based on one base pVHD. To update a pVHD backup image, please do the following:

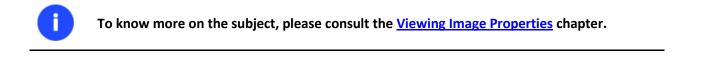
- 1. Click the New Backup Format tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Incremental Backup to VD.
- 2. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 3. On the Browse for Archive page, specify the required full (base) partition archive:
  - By clicking the **Switch to Archive List View** link, you can see a list of images contained in the Archive Database (if any). Please note that only sector-based images of the new type (with a .pfi index file) are available to work with.

Specify a base image to do an increment for

Туре	Creation Date 🛛 🗸	Source Object	Size	Archive Size
r <u>e</u>	10/29/2013 8:02:57 AM	VD Container	500 GB	11.5 GB
	2			
•				F
Switch to File \	<u>View</u>			
Archive File	<u>D</u> etails ———			
Name:	Backup_HDD0_20131	029_0713		
Comment:	Backup_image_20131	029_0713		
File:	Z:/Backup_HDD0_20	131029_0713/Backup_HDD0_20131029_0713.pfi		
Туре:	Full VD Container			
Parent:	No			
Creation dat	e: 10/29/2013 8:02:57 A	м		
A Commentation	- determined at a state of the			
view archive	e detailed structure			

To continue, click Next

To get a clear-cut picture on properties of the required image, just click on it and the section below will (i.e. Archive File Details) display a short description.



By clicking the Switch to File View link, you can find the required image in the browser-like window. The • section below (i.e. Archive File Details) will also display a short description of the selected image. Please note that only sector-based images of the new type (with a .pfi index file) are available to work with.

Specify a base in	nage to do an increment for							
Look in: [ 🔄 N	letwork Storage (\\server2\pool) (Z:) 🗾 🗔 🂥 🚽							
Name		Size	Date					
	lume (E:)			' J				
E Network Storage (\\server2\pool) [Z:)								
📄 🔛 Bao	kup_HDD0_20131029_0713		10/29/2013 8:02:58 AM					
	Backup_HDD0_20131029_0713.pfi	48 KB	10/29/2013 8:02:58 AM	-				
Files of type:	/D Container files			•				
Switch to Archiv	e List View							
⊢ Archive File <u>D</u>	etails							
Name:	Backup_HDD0_20131029_0713							
Comment:	Backup_image_20131029_0713							
File:	Z:/Backup_HDD0_20131029_0713/Backup_HDD0_20131029_0713.pf	i						
Туре:	Full VD Container							
Parent:	No							
Creation date:	10/29/2013 8:02:57 AM							
View archive o	letailed structure							



To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

Our product enables to create several incremental chains based on one base pVHD, provided each chain contains changed data of a particular backup object(s). This option allows much flexibility in managing backup contents. In the wizard incremental chains will be automatically associated with their base image.

## Virtual drives archive map . ..

Please specify e	ither the base image or the latest increment of the required incremental chain.					
Name						
対 Base Image						
📄 🧑 Increment 1						
<sup>™</sup> ∲]Increment 2 ∭Increment 3						
- Increme	ent 3					
_ Archive File <u>D</u>	etails					
Name:	Increment 3					
Comment:	Increment 3					
File:	Z:/Backup_HDD0_20131029_0713/inc_1_0_3/inc_3.pfi					
Туре:	Incremental VD Container					
Parent:	Z:/Backup_HDD0_20131029_0713/Backup_HDD0_20131029_0713.pfi					
Creation date:	10/29/2013 8:18:16 AM					

4. The Archive Content page displays detailed information about the contents of the archive.

Specify backup objects (partitions or entire hard disks)

Туре	File system	Size	Used
VD Archive		11.5 GB (12,362,862,592 Bytes)	
Virtual Hard Disk Drive		500 GB	
Primary	NTFS	350 MB	256.8 MB
Primary	NTFS	21.2 GB	10.5 GB
Primary	NTFS	478.4 GB	4.9 GB
Local Disk			
[No label]			
NTFS	Tota	al size: 21.2 GB	
10.5 GB	Free	e space: 10.6 GB	
	Virtual Hard Disk Drive Primary Primary Primary Minary International Disk [No label] NTFS	Virtual Hard Disk Drive Primary NTFS Primary NTFS Primary NTFS Molabel NTFS Tota	Virtual Hard Disk Drive 500 GB Primary NTFS 350 MB Primary NTFS 21.2 GB Primary NTFS 478.4 GB Local Disk [No label] NTFS Total size: 21.2 GB

Advanced backup settings are unavailable for this type of backup.

5. Edit the default description to the created incremental image if necessary. Specify the required method of acquiring information on changed data:

#### Incremental Image Properties



- **Compare metadata** (default). At first file system metadata on each source and backup volume will be analyzed. As a result there will be built pairs of directory trees. If having to do with NTFS, directory trees will be built directly on MFT, skipping the file system analysis. Next action will be comparison of file attributes (e.g. creation/modification date) inside directory trees of the source and backup volumes to:
  - Copy all file clusters with changed attributes;
  - Copy all file clusters with changed location of cluster chains;
  - Copy all clusters of new files;
  - Copy all sectors with metadata, for instance all copies of directories and MFT for NTFS. Depending
    on a file system and its occupation, a full metadata copy can take up to several hundreds of
    megabytes.

This method is the fastest of all three, but increments will also be the largest.

- **Compare all data**. At first there will be created a list of all occupied cluster chains. After comparison with the backup contents, all changed clusters will be copied. This method is slower, but more space saving than the first one. Please note however that if an increment has been done after defragmentation, plenty of redundant data might fall into it, as during the defragmentation process data is being moved, but not changed.
- **Compare changed data**. It's a combination of the mentioned above methods. After detection of new/changed files, there will be created a list of clusters to copy. During the copying, clusters on source and backup volumes will be compared in order to copy only changed clusters and clusters of new files, as well as clusters of changed file system metadata (not all metadata). This method is the slowest of all three, but it can guarantee increments will only contain changed/new data.
- 6. Click **Finish** to complete the wizard, then apply the pending changes.

After the operation is completed you receive an incremental update to the selected pVHD backup image, placed next to the base image.



This operation can also be accomplished with our recovery media.

## Creating a sector increment to a full partition backup

Before you start, please take into account the following issues:

- You should have a full backup of the new type (with a .pfi index file). Any of our flagship products since Hard Disk Manager 12 supports this functionality;
- Increments can only be created for full archives stored on a local mounted drive or a network share;
- Increments will be stored together with the corresponding full archive;
- Increments cannot be created for archives of entire GPT disks;
- Increments can only be restored under Windows (if no restart is needed) or WinPE;
- Increments can only be used with our software;
- Increment cannot be encrypted, compressed, or splitted;
- Increments cannot be browsed in Volume Explorer.

# To know more on the subject, please consult the **<u>Basic Concepts</u>** section.

To update an image of the selected partition, please do the following:

- 1. Click the Backup & Restore tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Incremental Backup.
- 2. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 3. On the Browse for Archive page, specify the required full (base) partition archive:
  - By clicking the **Switch to Archive List View** link, you can see a list of images contained in the Archive Database (if any). Please note that only sector-based images of the new type (with a .pfi index file) are available to work with.

😤 Show	partitions 📃 💌	S 🔒	₿ <b>¢</b>						
Туре	Creation Date	$\nabla$	Source Object	Size	Archive Size		Flags		Co
9	10/9/2013 7	:08:28 AM	NEW VOLUME	350 MB	1	.8 MB	ą	08	
9	10/9/2013 7	:08:20 AM	Local Disk	9 MB	30	).8 KB	7		
୍ର ଅପ୍ର ଅ	10/9/20136	:38:00 AM	New Volume (E:)	10.9 GB	4	.7 MB	ą		
9	10/9/20136	:16:13 AM	Local Disk (C:)	477.7 GB	5	5.2 GB	3	08	
9	10/9/2013 5	:52:57 AM	Local Disk (C:)	499.6 GB	5	5.1 GB		08	
Switch to F	ile View File Details					_			<u> </u>
		Name:	Local Disk (C:	)					
		Comment:	[No comment is a	ivailable]					
		Volume lab	el: [No label]						
(		File system	: NTFS		Total size: 47	77.7 GB			
		Used spac	e: 15.9 GB	I	Free space: 46	61.7 GB			
		File:	C:/arc_0910131	31559760/arc	_0910131315	59760.p	ſi		

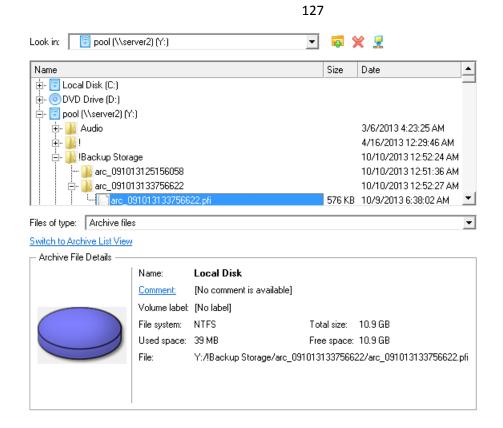
To get a clear-cut picture on properties of the required image, just click on it and the section below will (i.e. Archive File Details) display a short description.



To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

• By clicking the **Switch to File View** link, you can find the required image in the browser-like window. The section below (i.e. Archive File Details) will also display a short description of the selected image. Please note that only sector-based images of the new type (with a .pfi index file) are available to work with.

<u>м</u> 1





To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

4. The Archive Content page displays detailed information about the contents of the archive.

Archive Content

Name				Туре	File system	Size	Used
🖵 🗹 🕞 Local Disk				Primary	NTFS	10.9 GB	39 MB
Archive Details							
Archive Details	Name:	Local Disk					
	Volume label:		Ŧ	- t - t - t	10.0 CD		
	File system:	NTFS		otal size:	10.9 GB		
	Used space:	39 MB	Fr	ee space	: 10.9 GB		



Advanced backup settings are unavailable for sector-based increments due to the usage of the new image container (.pVHD).

5. Add comments to your backup describing its contents;

Please enter a short comment to describe the archive	
No comment	

6. On the Backup Summary page review all parameters of the operation and modify them if necessary. Click the Next button to start the backup process.

After the operation is completed you receive an incremental update to the selected pVHD backup image, placed next to the base image.



This operation can also be accomplished with the WinPE recovery media.

# Creating a file increment to a full partition backup

To update only files you need since the last full partition backup, please do the following:

- 1. Click the Backup & Restore tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Create File Complement.
- 2. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 3. On the Browse for Archive page, specify the required full (base) partition archive:
  - By clicking the **Switch to Archive List View** link, you can see a list of images contained in the Archive Database (if any).

Туре	Creation Dat	e $ abla$	Source Object	Size	Archive Si	ze	Flags	Co M
9	10/9/2013	7:08:28 AM	NEW VOLUME	350 MB		1.8 MB	l	1
6	10/9/2013	7:08:20 AM	Local Disk	9 MB		30.8 KB	I.	1
6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	10/9/2013 8	6:38:00 AM	New Volume (E:)	10.9 GB		4.7 MB	3	1
9	10/9/2013 8	6:16:13 AM	Local Disk (C:)	477.7 GB		5.2 GB	700	1
9	10/9/2013	5:52:57 AM	Local Disk (C:)	499.6 GB		5.1 GB	70	1
•								•
Switch to F	ile View							
<ul> <li>Archive I</li> </ul>	File Details ——							
	[	Name:	Local Disk (C	:)				
		Comment:	[No comment is	available]				
		Volume lab	el: [No label]					
(		File system	: NTFS	Т	otal size:	477.7 GB		
		Used spac	e: 15.9 GB	F	ree space:	461.7 GB		
		File:	C:/arc_0910131	31559760/arc	_09101313	1559760.p	ofi	

To get a clear-cut picture on properties of the required image, just click on it and the section below will (i.e. Archive File Details) display a short description.



To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

• By clicking the **Switch to File View** link, you can find the required image in the browser-like window. The section below (i.e. Archive File Details) will also display a short description of the selected image.

Look in: 🔋 🔲 Local Disk (I	D:)		- 🗟 🎽	8 🛃
Name			Size	Date 🔺
🖹 - 📴 Local Disk (C:) 🗄 - <u>]</u> arc_09101312	5156058			10/9/2013 5:52:57 AM
🕂 🕀 🔛 arc_09101313	1559760			10/9/2013 6:22:51 AM
📄 🔛 arc_09101313	3756622			10/9/2013 6:38:02 AM
arc_09101	3133756622.p	bf	4.7 MB	10/9/2013 6:38:02 AM
- arc_09101	3133756622.p	fi	576 KB	10/9/2013 6:38:02 AM
	3133756622 n	fm	1 G K B	10/9/2013 6-38-02 AM
Switch to Archive List View				
Archive File Details ——				
[	Name:	New Volume (E:)		
	Comment:	[No comment is available]		
	Volume label:	New Volume		
	File system:	NTFS	Total size:	10.9 GB
	Used space:	39 MB	Free space: 1	10.9 GB
	File:	C:/arc_091013133756622/a	arc_091013133	756622.pbf
		_	_	
L				



To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

4. On the What folders and files to back up page you can see contents of the selected partition archive. Mark a checkbox opposite a file or folder to build up contents of the future incremental image.

Name		Size	Date	
	arc_091013140825801		10/9/2013 7:08:29 AM	
📔 🗄 🗖 🚺	arc_101013053218496		10/9/2013 10:32:29 PM	
📃 🗄 🗖 🛄	arc_101013061434390		10/9/2013 11:14:51 PM	
📃 🕴 庄 🛄	arc_101013062903344		10/9/2013 11:53:11 PM	
📔 🕴 🗖 🚺	arc_101013091536750		10/10/2013 2:15:43 AM	
🕴 🕂 🗖 🚺	arc_101013091716250		10/10/2013 2:17:49 AM	
🕴 🗄 🗖 🚺	PerfLogs		8/22/2013 8:22:35 AM	
📃 🕴 🗖 🚺	Program Files		10/9/2013 5:50:43 AM	
📃 🕴 🗖 🚺	Program Files (x86)		10/9/2013 11:01:16 PM	v I
📃 🗄 🗖 🛄	ProgramData		10/9/2013 11:01:18 PM	
📃 🕴 🗖 🚺	System Volume Information		10/9/2013 6:17:05 AM	4
🕴 🗹 🚺	Users		9/3/2013 2:48:22 PM	
🖶 🗖	🔐 Administrator		10/9/2013 10:26:37 PM	_
	<u>]]</u> Default		8/22/2013 12:11:25 PM	
	- 🥅 퉲 AppData		8/22/2013 8:36:30 AM	
<u>+</u> .	- 🥅 퉲 Desktop		8/22/2013 8:36:30 AM	
.	Coursents		8/22/2013 7:45:52 AM	
	🗌 🛺 Downloads		8/22/2013 8:36:30 AM	
<u>+</u> .	- 🥅 👪 Favorites		8/22/2013 8:36:30 AM	
<u>+</u> -	· 🥅 퉲 Links		8/22/2013 8:36:30 AM	
<u>+</u> .	🗌 🚺 Music		8/22/2013 8:36:30 AM	
<del> </del> -	🗌 🚺 Pictures		8/22/2013 8:36:30 AM	•

Click the check box next to any file or folder you want to back up

5. **Specify include masks**. The program includes a lot of ready-made filters to effectively control contents of your backup images.

Include masks manage files and folders that will be added to the archive. If include mask is specified, all the files that do not conform to the mask will be omitted and will not get into the archive.

C Do not use include masks (all files will be included into the archive)

O Use include masks

	eadable files (44 filters)	•
Add filter	Rename category Delete category	
	Delete filter	
	Delete filter Delete filter	
	Delete filter Delete filter	
*.txt	Delete filter	
	Delete filter Delete filter	
	Delete filter Delete filter	
*.xls	Delete filter	
	Delete filter Delete filter	
	Delete filter Delete filter	•
		-

Add category...

You can also create your own filter by clicking the **Add category...** button.

ស	Create new category	? ×
Name:	[	
Filter:	Enter a mask or file name here	Browse
Description:	Enter filter description here	
🕕 You car	use wildcards <b>*</b> and <b>?</b> to specify the	mask.
	ОК	Cancel

- Name. Give to the filter any name you like, but try to use an informative one;
- **Filter**. Press the Browse button to select files or folders you would like to be included or specify a filter mask by using \* or ? wildcards;
- Description. Add a short description to the filter not to miss it up later.

Click the OK button and you will get a new item on the list of filters. By marking/unmarking a checkbox opposite its name you can choose whether to use it or not.



By setting an include mask, you automatically ignore files that do not match to it, thus they won't be added to the backup image.

6. **Specify exclude masks**. The program includes a lot of ready-made filters to effectively control contents of your backup images.

Exclude masks manage files and folders that will be excluded from archive. Specify exclude masks:

-	Executable & Instal	llations (8 filters)	
Add filt	er Rename category	Delete category	
*.dll	<u>Delete filter</u>		
*.exe	<u>Delete filter</u>		
*.ocx	<u>Delete filter</u>		
*.vxd	<u>Delete filter</u>		
*.cab	<u>Delete filter</u>		
*.msi	<u>Delete filter</u>		
*.msp	<u>Delete filter</u>		
* dru	Delete filter		
.ul¥			
	Auxiliary files (18 filte	ers)	
Ξ Γ.			
∃ ⊑. <u>Add filt</u>	Auxiliary files (18 filte		
⊒	Auxiliary files (18 filte er <u>Rename category</u>		
⊡ □ <u>Add filt</u> *.bak *.old	Auxiliary files (18 filte er <u>Rename category</u> <u>Delete filter</u>		
□ □ , Add filt *.bak *.old *.tmp *.temp	Auxiliary files (18 filte er <u>Rename category</u> <u>Delete filter</u> <u>Delete filter</u> <u>Delete filter</u> <u>Delete filter</u>		
∃ 「 Add filt *.bak *.old *.tmp	Auxiliary files (18 filte er <u>Rename category</u> <u>Delete filter</u> <u>Delete filter</u> <u>Delete filter</u> <u>Delete filter</u>		

7. Add comments to your backup describing its contents.

Please	enter a short comment to describe the archive
	No comment

8. On the Backup Summary page review all parameters of the operation and modify them if necessary. Click the Next button to start the backup process.

After the operation is completed you receive an incremental backup of the selected partition archive containing information specified in the wizard. It is placed into the same destination as the base image.



# Creating an increment to a full file backup

To update a file backup, please do the following:

- 1. Click the Backup & Restore tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Create Incremental File Archive.
- 2. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 3. On the Browse for Archive page, specify the required full (base) file archive:
  - By clicking the **Switch to Archive List View** link, you can see a list of images contained in the Archive Database (if any).

#### 🔄 🚯 脉

Туре	Creation Date	Source Object	Size	Flags	- Δ	Comment	М
	10/9/2013 11:09:02 PM	File-level Archive	24 KB		Ę		1'
	10/9/2013 11:15:18 PM	File-level Archive	293.5 MB		Ę		1'
_	10/9/2013 11:22:19 PM	File-level Archive	24 KB		3		1'
	10/9/2013 11:17:38 PM	File-level Archive	589.5 KB	<u>}</u>	Ę		1'
							_
•							
Switch to	File View						
_ Archive	File Details						
Total siz	ze: 24 KB (24,576 Bytes)	Backup date: 10/	9/2013 11:22:	19 PM			
Archive	size: 389 Bytes						
Commer	<u>nt:</u>	[No comment is avail	able]				
File:		C:/arc_09101313155	59760//archi	ve.pfi			

To get a clear-cut picture on properties of the required image, just click on it and the section below will (i.e. Archive File Details) display a short description.



To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

• By clicking the **Switch to File View** link, you can find the required image in the browser-like window. The section below (i.e. Archive File Details) will also display a short description of the selected image.

Look in: 🕞 Local Disk (C:)	•	👼 💥 💈	
Name	Size	Date	-
🚊 🕞 Local Disk (C:)			_
🛓 🖶 🔐 arc_091013125156058		10/9/2013 11:17:27 PM	4
📄 🖕 🏬 arc_091013131559760		10/9/2013 11:22:08 PM	1
📄 🖓 arc_101013062156703		10/9/2013 11:22:08 PM	4
🖻 · 🕌 FL000000000000000000000000000000000000		10/9/2013 11:22:19 PM	1
📄 archive.pfi	389 Bytes	10/9/2013 11:22:19 PM	1
united arc_091013131559760.pfi international	28.3 MB	10/9/2013 6:22:48 AM	
🛓 🗄 🔐 arc_091013133756622		10/9/2013 6:38:02 AM	•
Files of type:       Archive files         Switch to Archive List View       Archive File Details         Total size:       24 KB (24,576 Bytes)       Backup date: 10/9/2         Archive size:       389 Bytes       Comment:       [No comment is available]         File:       C:/arc_0910131315597	e]		×



To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

After the operation is completed you receive an incremental backup of the selected file archive. It is placed into the same destination as the base image.



This operation can also be accomplished with our recovery media.

## **Creating a cyclic partition backup**

To automate the partition backup process, please do the following:

- 1. Click the Backup & Restore tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Cyclic Backup.
- 2. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button;
- 3. On the What to back up page, select a partition you want to make a cyclic backup of;

Click the check box next to any hard disk drive or partition you want to back up

Name	Туре	File system	Size	U: 🔺
🗄 - 🔜 My Computer	My Computer			
🖕 🗹 📴 Basic MBR Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	Internal Hard Disk Drive		500 GB	
🖕 🥅 🚰 First Hard Disk Track	First Track		0 Bytes	
🦾 🥅 📴 Master Boot Record	MBR		0 Bytes	
🔽 🕞 Local Disk	Primary	NTFS	350 MB	25
🦾 🔽 💽 Local Disk (C:)	Primary	NTFS	280.3 GB	E
🖕 🔚 🔲 📴 Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	Internal Hard Disk Drive		500 GB	
🚊 🖳 🧮 First Hard Disk Track	First Track		0 Bytes	
🦾 🥅 📴 Master Boot Record	MBR		0 Bytes	
🥅 🔄 Local Disk (F:)	Primary	NTFS	499.6 GB	
🦾 🥅 🎯 NEW VOLUME	Primary	Linux Ext4	350 MB	8
📮 🔲 🔄 Basic MBR Hard Disk 2 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	Internal Hard Disk Drive		750 GB	
🚊 🖳 🧮 First Hard Disk Track	First Track		0 Bytes	
Master Boot Record	MBR		0 Bytes	<u> </u>
The size of objects to back up: <b>280.3 GB</b> Estimated archive size <b>48.3 GB</b>				

# The current version of the program enables to make a cyclic backup of only one partition at a time.

4. On the Backup Destination page, select a mounted/unmounted partition, a network share, or an FTP server to place backup images to.

Select a folder where archive should be placed and specify archive name. Archive name will be used as a sub-folder where backup data files will be stored.

Archive location: C:\arc_091013141723927\			4	×	2
Name	Size	Date			
😑 🔜 My Computer					
💼 🖥 Local Disk (C:)					
🗄 🖳 Network					

5. Edit the archive name if necessary.

Please specify the archive name. Archive name will be used as a sub-folder where backup
data files will be stored.
_ Archive details

Archive name:	arc_09101313500	6539
Estimated archive s	Estimated archive size:	
Space available on backup destination:		10.7 GB



Please take into account values of the parameters Estimated archive size and Space available on backup destination - if the archive size exceeds the available space, another drive needs to be selected.

6. Add comments to your backup describing its contents.

Please enter a short comment to describe the archive



7. Set a timetable for the operation.

Please specify how and when would you like to perform the task:

Weekly	-	]
🔽 Do not reboo	t if reboot is re	quired
🔲 System shutd	own after bacl	kup
Start the task on:	10/09/2013	3 🚔 at   12:00 AM ಿ
Every	1	week(s)
on:	🔽 Monday	🔲 Tuesday 🔲 Wednesday 🔲 Thursd
	🔲 Friday	🔲 Saturday 🔲 Sunday
🔲 Do not run the	e task after:	10/09/2013 🛫

#### Specify user name and password.

#### To know more on the subject, please consult the Task Scheduling chapter.

8. On the Cyclic backup type page, choose the way of creating a cyclic backup:

	There are several types of the cyclic backup the Wizard can perform. Please choose the one you would like to carry out:
1	-Cyclic Backup Type
	Sasic type
	Every image made during the operation will be created as a complete base image.
	O Differential type
	Every first image will be made as a complete base image, all the others will be differentiated from it. A differential backup only contains changes in the partition's contents with respect to a complete image.

- **Base type**. Every image created during the operation will be made as a full archive.
- **Differential type**. Every first image will be made as a full (base) archive and all the others will be differentiated from it. This operation requires much less space, thus considerably saving your system resources.

By setting the **Maximum disk space to store images** and the **Maximum number of images to store** parameters you may define when the operation will be cycled. That means that on exceeding these two parameters the oldest archives will be automatically overwritten (if choosing the Differential type only differential images will be overwritten).

Maximum disk space to store images:	10000	Ē	MB.
Maximum number of images to store:	2	-	

9. On the Backup Summary page review all parameters of the operation and modify them if necessary. Click the Next button to start the backup process.

The operation will run according to the set timetable. The resulted backup images will be placed into the specified destination (a local or a network disk), its features defined by the wizard.

## Merging a full partition backup with one of its differentials

To merge a full partition backup with one of its differentials, thus getting a new full partition archive, please do the following:

- 1. Click the Backup & Restore tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Synthetic Backup.
- 2. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 3. On the Browse for Archive page, you only need to specify the required differential archive. The program then will automatically find its base image:
  - By clicking the **Switch to Archive List View** link, you can see a list of images contained in the Archive Database (if any).

省 Show a	I <u>-</u>	S 🔒 🖗	•			
Туре	Creation Date	e $ abla$	Source Object	Size	Archive Size	Fla_
<b>B</b> <b>D</b>	10/10/2013	1:43:35 AM	Local Disk	10.9 GB	2.5 GB	8
<b>S</b>	10/9/20131	1:29:07 PM	Local Disk (C:)	477.7 GB	26.7 GB	
	10/9/20131	1:22:19 PM	File-level Archive	24 KB	389 Bytes	
	10/9/20131	1:17:38 PM	File-level Archive	589.5 KB	4.9 KB	<b>}</b>
	10/9/20131	1:15:18 PM	File-level Archive	293.5 MB	165.5 MB	-
•						ЪГ
	[	Name: Comment:	Local Disk			
		Comment:	No comment			
		Volume labe	: [No label]			
		File system:	NTFS	Total size	x 10.9 GB	
		Used space:	9.7 GB	Free spa	ce: 1.2 GB	
		File:	Y://diff_1010130	84041587.pb	f	

To get a clear-cut picture on properties of the required image, just click on it and the section below will (i.e. Archive File Details) display a short description.



To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

• By clicking the **Switch to File View** link, you can find the required image in the browser-like window. The section below (i.e. Archive File Details) will also display a short description of the selected image.

Look in: 📄 pool (\\se	rver2) (Y:)			🗾 👼 💥 💈	
Name			Size	Date	
⊡ <mark>]])</mark> arc_0910 ⊡ <b>]])</b> diff_11	- 13125156058 13133756622 010130840415 ff_1010130840		2.5 GB	, 10/10/2013 12:51:36 AM 10/10/2013 1:43:35 AM 10/10/2013 2:00:08 AM 10/10/2013 2:00:09 AM	• •
Files of type: Archive file:	\$				•
Switch to Archive List View					
_ Archive File Details —					
	Name:	Local Disk			
	Comment:	No comment			
	Volume label:	[No label]			
	File system:	NTFS	Total	size: 10.9 GB	
	Used space:	9.7 GB	Free s	pace: 1.2 GB	
	File:	Y:/!Backup Storage/	'/diff_1	01013084041587.pbf	



To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

4. On the Synthesis Settings page you can additionally modify any property of the selected backup image if necessary. To accomplish our task we have no need to change anything at all.

137

Backup image options Password protection	Backup image options
CD/DVD/BD recording option	Control archive integrity
	Choose this option to allow writing of specific data that will later be used during restore to check the archive integrity. It can slow down the backup operation.
	🔽 Set image file names automatically
	Choose this option to automatically name files in complex archive.
	Compression level
	Normal compression
	Good compression. Provides average speed with the reasonable image size.
	Image split
	Enable image splitting
	Choose this option to enable splitting the archive to several files
	Maximum split size: 2000 MB 🚖
•	

5. On the Synthetic Archive Destination page, select where you want to place the resulted backup image.

138

There are several ways the Wizard can store your data. Please select how you would like to	
save the archive:	
······	

- C Save data to the Backup Capsule
- Save data to local/network drives.
- Save data to physical partitions.
- C Save data to FTP locations.
- O Burn the data to CD, DVD or BD.

### 6. Edit the archive name if necessary.

- Archive details ——		
Archive name:	arc_101013091945	5891
Estimated archive si:	48.7 GB	
Space available on l	backup destination:	417.2 GB



Please take into account values of the parameters Estimated archive size and Space available on backup destination - if the archive size exceeds the available space, another drive needs to be selected.

7. Add comments to your backup describing its contents;

Please enter a short comment to describe the archive

- No comment
- 8. On the Synthesis Summary page review all parameters of the operation and modify them if necessary. Click the Next button to start the backup process.

After the operation is completed you receive a new full partition archive. It is placed into the specified destination (a local or network disk, or a CD/DVD disc), its features defined by the wizard.

This function is currently unavailable for modification of entire hard disk backups.

This operation can also be accomplished with our recovery media.

# **Recovery Scenarios**

## **Correcting EFI parameters**

To specify a bootable device in the EFI boot entry, please do the following:

1. Start up the computer from the WinPE recovery media.



Please use Boot Media Builder to prepare the WinPE recovery environment, which you can get here: <u>www.paragon-software.com/my-account/</u>.

To automatically boot from the recovery media please make sure the on-board BIOS is set up to boot from CD/USB first.

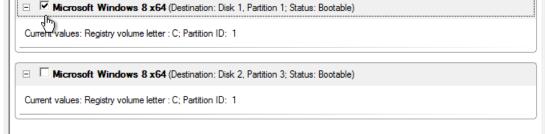
- 2. Launch Boot Corrector.
- 3. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 4. Select Correct EFI parameters to specify the required bootable device in the EFI boot entry.



The option above will be available for the user, only if the operation is accomplished through the 64-bit WinPE media.

5. The wizard will detect and list all available GPT partitions that accommodate 64-bit Windows OS. Choose the one you need to boot from, to let the wizard modify the EFI boot entry correspondingly.

The wizard has searched your computer for valid Windows installations. You can see results of the operation below. Note: The status "System" stays for a system partition, "Bootable" - for a boot partition.



- 6. Confirm the operation.
- 7. Click the Finish button to close Boot Corrector.
- 8. Restart the computer.

# **Correcting BCD (Boot Configuration Data)**

To automatically correct Windows BCD, please do the following:

1. Start up the computer from the WinPE recovery media.



Please use Boot Media Builder to prepare the WinPE recovery environment, which you can get here: <u>www.paragon-software.com/my-account/</u>.

To automatically boot from the recovery media please make sure the on-board BIOS is set

- 2. Launch Boot Corrector.
- 3. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 4. Select Correct boot parameters... to let the wizard fix BCD in all found Windows installations.

Windows installation to correct View the list of all windows installations and correct boot parameters
Correct the Master Boot Record (MBR) View the list of all Hard Disks and correct MBR executable code on some of them
Edit/View Sectors View, edit, backup and restore sectors or a group of sectors on the hard disk or partition of your choice
Correct boot parameters (boot.ini, BCD) Automatically correct boot.ini and BCD on all hard disks in system
<b>Correct EFI boot parameters</b> Fix EFI boot entry or switch EFI boot entry to another GPT bootable hard drive with Windows OS installed

- 5. Confirm the operation.
- 6. Click the Finish button to close Boot Corrector.
- 7. Restart the computer.

#### **Fixing Windows startup ability**

Let's assume that due to an unknown reason your Windows fails to complete the startup procedure. At first everything seems quite OK, you can see the standard startup messages on the screen, but at some moment it hangs up.

To fix your Windows startup ability, please do the following:

1. Start up the computer from our Linux/DOS recovery media.

Please use Recovery Media Builder or Boot Media Builder to prepare Paragon's recovery environments on CD/DVD, flash, or in an ISO-image. You can get these utilities here: <u>www.paragon-software.com/my-account/</u>.

To automatically boot from the recovery media please make sure the on-board BIOS is set up to boot from CD/USB first.

2. In the boot menu select Normal Mode to use the Linux recovery environment (more preferable) or Safe Mode to use the PTS DOS recovery environment (in case you've got problems with Linux). Moreover you've got the option to boot into the Low-Graphics Safe Mode (PTS DOS safe mode) to cope with a serious hardware incompatibility. In this case, only the minimal set of drivers will be included, like hard disk, monitor, and keyboard drivers. This mode has simple graphics and a simple menu.



By default the Normal Mode will be automatically initiated after a 10 second idle period.

3. In the Linux launch menu select Boot Corrector. You can find it in PTS DOS as well.

#### 4. On the Wizard's Welcome page, select the Search for Windows installations to correct option.

Please choose the operation:

- Search for Windows installations to correct
- Correct Master Boot Record (MBR)
- Correct partition boot record
- Correct boot parameters (boot.ini, BCD)
- Modify partition parameters

To begin, click Next.

5. On the next page choose the required Windows installation from the list of found installations (if several), then select the **Edit the Boot.ini file** option. If you're not sure which installation you need, please use the Properties button to get more info on the selected item.

#### Correct Windows installations

Program has searched for valid Windows installations on your computer. The results of the search you can see below. Status S refers to a system partition (you can edit the Boot.ini file), B - a boot partition (you can correct the System Registry).

Disk 0. Partition 0			
DISKO, Partition o	S+B	WINDOWS	WinXP
e highlighted Window			

- O Correct drive letters in the System Registry
- Edit the Boot.ini file
- Correct partition boot record
- O Adjust OS to boot on new hardware

To continue, click Next.

6. Examine the file – maybe that's where the problem is. If it contains a mistake, correct it by using the appropriate buttons.

Edit the Boot.ini file on Hard Disk 0, Partition 0							
[operating system	sk(0)rdisk(0)partition(1)\WIND s] k(0)partition(1)\WINDOWS="I		ofessional" /noexecute=				
Сору	Inseri	Add	Delete				
<u>E</u> dit	Insert the sample	Add the <u>s</u> ample					

7. If the Boot.ini file does not contain any mistake, please return to the Correct Windows Installations page to correct drive letters in the Windows System Registry.

#### Correct Windows installations

Program has searched for valid Windows installations on your computer. The results of the search you can see below. Status S refers to a system partition (you can edit the Boot.ini file), B - a boot partition (you can correct the System Registry).

Ν	Partition	Status	Root	System
1	Disk 0, Partition 0	S+B	WINDOWS	WinXP
ort	he highlighted Windo	ws insta	lation please	•

Correct drive letters in the System Registry

O Edit the Boot.ini file

O Correct partition boot record

O Adjust OS to boot on new hardware

To continue, click Next.

8. On the next page choose a hard disk from the pull-down list (if several), then the required partition. If you're not sure which installation you need, please use the Properties button to get more info on the selected item.

Pa	rtitions List	Letters	Map				
				and see all partit from the System selected.			
Ва	asic Hard Dis	k 0	~	500 GB, VMwa	re Virtual		
Ν	Туре	Active	File System	Volume label	Size	Drive letters	
0	Primary	Yes		System Rese	350 MB	<none></none>	
1	Primary	No	NTFS	[No label]	478 GB	C:	
2	Primary	No	Free		21.9 GB	<none></none>	
Ρ	roperties						Edit letters

9. Click the Edit Letters button to correct an existing drive letter or assign a new one in the Windows System Registry.

Ρā	artitions List	Letters	Мар			
Ве					on it. Information about drive lette istry of the Windows installation	ers
В	asic Hard Dis	sk 0		Drive letters	×	
N	Туре	Active			rive letters	
0	Primary	Yes	1		<none></none>	
1	. Primary	No	Letters:	1		
2	Primary	No	C:	C <u>h</u> ange	:None>	
				Release		
				Add		
F	Properties			<u>C</u> lose	<u>E</u> dit letters	

- 10. Once you've assigned the appropriate drive letter, close the dialog, then click the Apply button.
- 11. Confirm the operation.

	3 pending oper Apply chang	
Yes	No	Details

12. After the operation is completed click the Report button to see a well informative summary page. The program also enables to store the resulted report. To do that, just press the Save button and choose the exact location in the opened dialog.

	Report	×		n. To view f
[	Operations performed:	1		
	Operation #1: Correct partition boot record		1	
	Partition targeted: Hard disk 0, Partition 0 Status: Successful			
	Date and Time: 2013 Oct 10 Thd 15:27:52			your comp
				the program
	Operation #2: Change drive letters Partition targeted: Hard disk 0. Partition 0			
	Info: System Root folder is "WINDOWS"			
	Status: Successful			
	Date and Time: 2013 Oct 10 Thd 15:28:39		1	
E	Save	Close		

- 13. Click the Finish button to close Boot Corrector.
- 14. Reboot the computer.

# Restoring a hard disk from the bootable Backup Capsule

Let's assume that your computer fails to boot because of a virus attack or corruption of some system critical files. But you've got the bootable backup capsule containing a backup of your hard disk. That's just enough to easily get your system back on track again.

To restore your hard disk from a backup image contained in the backup capsule when the current OS is down, please do the following:

1. Start up the computer from the bootable backup capsule. By default, the program offers to use the F1 hot key to boot from it.



This scenario implies that the backup capsule is bootable.

2. In the boot menu select **Normal Mode** to use the Linux recovery environment (more preferable) or **Safe Mode** to use the PTS DOS recovery environment (in case you've got problems with Linux).



By default the Normal Mode will be automatically initiated after a 10 second idle period.

3. In the Linux launch menu select the Simple Restore Wizard. You can find the same wizard in PTS DOS as well.

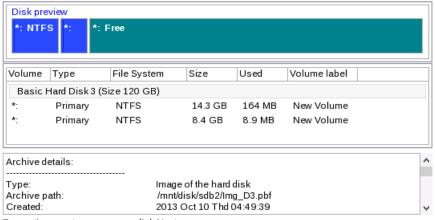
- 4. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 5. On the What to Restore page, you can see a list of available images (if several). Most likely the required archive will be there too. If not, click the standard browse button [...] to find it. When you find your image, double click on it to proceed.

Please select the file with partition or hard disk image.

You can select image from list below (on Double click):

*	Created on	Туре	Archive path				
•	2013 Oct 11 11:33:52	Partition	/arc_11101311	1 ^			
•	2013 Oct 11 11:17:06	Partition	<sup>√</sup> /arc_11101311	1			
•	2013 Oct 11 11:16:55	Disk	/arc_11101311	1			
•	2013 Oct 11 11:16:55	Disk	/arc_11101311	1			
•	2013 Oct 11 02:49:50	Disk	Img_D0.pfi	$\sim$			
<			:	>			
- Select Image (HDD0/Part2)/arc_111013111635639/arc_11101311)							

6. On the Image Properties page, make sure that you select the correct image by viewing the provided information about the archive.



To continue restore process, click Next.

7. On the next page specify a hard disk to restore the image to (if several in your computer). By default, the program offers to restore the archive exactly where it belongs. That's what we actually need.

Basic Hard Disk 0 (VMw	are Virtual) - 500 G	В					
E: NTFS		*: Backu	pCapsule E	iC	*: Free		
Basic Hard Disk 1 (VMw	are Virtual) - 500 G	В					
*: NTFS New Volume	D:	NTFS New	Volume				
Basic Hard Disk 2 (VMw	are Virtual) - 750 G	В					
*: NTFS					*: Free		
Basic GPT Hard Disk 3 (	VMware Virtual) - 1	20 GB					
*: Free							
Basic Hard Disk 0	✓ Mod	lel VMware '	Virtual, Size	500 GB			
N Volume Type	File System	Size	Used	Free	Volume label	Active	Hidden
Basic Hard Disk 0 (Size	500 GB)						

Ba	asic Hard I	Disk 0 (Size 50	00 GB)						
0	*:	Primary	NTFS	350 MB	257 MB	93.1 MB	System Resen	No	No
1	E:	Primary	NTFS	191 GB	60.9 GB	130 GB	[No label]	No	No
2	*:	Primary	BackupCapsule	141 GB	7.8 GB	133 GB	BC	Yes	Yes
3	*:	Primary	Free	168 GB				No	No

You can also make the program resize the on-disk partitions proportionally if necessary by marking the appropriate checkbox.



All contents on the disk selected for restoring purposes will be deleted during the operation.

8. On the Restore Summary page you can see your hard disk layout before and after the operation. Click the Next button to initiate the restore process.

View changes on	Basic Hard Disk 0
Your disk before operations: C: NTFS	*: BackupCapsule BC
Your disk after operations: *: NTFS	*: BackupCapsule BC

9. In the Progress window you can see in real-time a detailed report on all actions carried out by the program.

Operations list		Suboperation progress				
1: Restore partition or disk		OI	peration progres	S		
	Copied so far: To copy:	10.0 GB	Read so far: Write so far: Overall progress	582.0 MB (44.8 MB/s) 582.0 MB (38.8 MB/s)		
	Time elapsed:	00:00:22	Time to finis	h: 00:08:48		
Restore Primary partition 0 (disk	: 2) from file: /arc_	091013125	5156058/arc_09	1013125156058.pfi		
Data writing						

10. After completing the operation close the wizard and reboot the computer.

To make Windows bootable on different hardware, please additionally complete the <u>P2P</u> <u>Adjust OS Wizard</u>.

## Restoring a system partition from external media (CD/DVD)

Let's assume that your computer fails to boot because of a virus attack or corruption of some system critical files. But you've got a backup of your system partition on a bootable DVD disc. That's just enough to easily get your system back on track again.

To restore your system partition from a backup image located on CD/DVD when the current OS is down, please do the following:

1. Insert a CD/DVD disc containing the previously prepared backup image into a CD/DVD drive (the BIOS must be enabled to boot the system from the CD/DVD device).

This scenario implies that you have got a bootable archive on your CD/DVD.

In case the backup image is stored on several CD/DVD disks, please insert the first one.

- 2. Restart the computer.
- 3. In the boot menu select **Normal Mode** to use the Linux recovery environment (more preferable) or **Safe Mode** to use the PTS DOS recovery environment (in case you've got problems with Linux). Moreover you've got the option to boot into the **Low-Graphics Safe Mode** (PTS DOS safe mode) to cope with a serious hardware incompatibility. In this case, only the minimal set of drivers will be included, like hard disk, monitor, and keyboard drivers. This mode has simple graphics and a simple menu.



By default the Normal Mode will be automatically initiated after a 10 second idle period.

- 4. In the PTS DOS launch menu select the Simple Restore Wizard. You can find the same wizard in Linux as well.
- 5. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.

146

6. On the What to Restore page, you can see a list of available images (if several). Most likely the required archive will be there too. If not, click the standard browse button [...] to find it. When you find your image, double click on it to proceed.

Please select the file with partition or hard disk image. You can select image from list below (on Double click):

 \*
 Created on
 Type
 Archive path

 •
 2013 Oct 14 11:48:28 Partition
 /media/CD1:linux:1,

 <</td>
 >

 Select Image
 ...

7. On the Image Properties page, make sure that you select the correct image by viewing the provided information about the archive.

Partition preview  The second		
Archive details:		^
Type: Archive path: Created: File system: Drive letter:	Image of the partition /arc_091013125156058/arc_091013125156058.pbf 2013 Oct 9 Wed 12:52:57 NTFS *:	
Volume label: Size (capacity): Used space: Free space: Sectors/Cluster:	500 GB (536.501.813.248 Bytes) 10.5 GB (2%) 489 GB (98%) 8 513 (0×200)	*

8. On the next page specify a hard disk, then one of its partitions to restore the image to (if several in your computer). By default, the program offers to restore the archive exactly where it belongs. That's what we actually need.

Basic Hard Disk 0 (VMware Virtual) - 500 GB         *: NTFS         *: BackupCapsule BC							
Bas	Basic Hard Disk 0 V Model VMware Virtual, Size 500 GB						
Ν	Volume	Туре	File System	Size	Volume label A	Active	Hidden
0	*:	Primary		350 MB	System Reserv	Yes	No
1	*:	Primary	NTFS	280 GB	[No label]	No	No

٢	ļ	٦
L	-	)

All contents on the partition selected for restoring purposes will be deleted during the operation.

9. On the Partition Start and Size page you can change size of the partition and its location if necessary.

Partition preview *: NTFS	
New size: (10263 - 511649) MB	↓ 511649
Free space before: (0 - 501386) MB	0 🗘 MB
Free space after: (0 - 501386) MB	0 💭 MB

10. On the Restore Summary page you can see your hard disk layout before and after the operation. Click the Next button to initiate the restore process.

View changes on	Basic Hard Disk 0
Your disk before operations:	
*: NTFS	*: BackupCapsule BC
Your disk after operations:	
*: NTFS	*: BackupCapsule BC

11. In the Progress window you can see in real-time a detailed report on all actions carried out by the program.

Operations list		Sub	operation progr	ess				
1: Restore partition or disk								
		Operation progress						
	Copied so far: 376.4 MB Read so far: 430.0 MB (86.0 MB/s)							
	То сору:	10.2 GB	Write so far:	430.0 MB (47.8 MB/s)				
		(	Overall progress	5				
	Time elapsed:	00:00:12	Time to fini:	sh: 00:06:28				
Restore Primary partition 0 (disk	: 1) from file: /arc_	09101312	5156058/arc_0	91013125156058.pbf				
Data writing								

12. After completing the operation close the wizard, and then reboot the computer.

To make Windows bootable on different hardware, please additionally complete the <u>P2P</u> <u>Adjust OS Wizard</u>.

## Restoring a system partition from a network drive

Let's assume that your computer fails to boot because of a virus attack or corruption of some system critical files. But you've got a backup of your hard disk on a remote backup server. That's just enough to easily get your system back on track again.

To restore your system partition from a backup image located on a network drive, please do the following:

Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

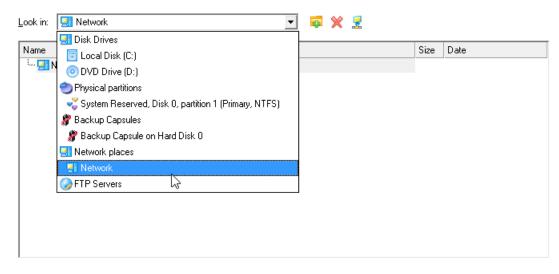
#### For PBF images

1. Start up the computer from the WinPE recovery media.

Please use Boot Media Builder to prepare the WinPE recovery environment, which you can get here: <u>www.paragon-software.com/my-account/</u>.

To automatically boot from the recovery media please make sure the on-board BIOS is set up to boot from CD/USB first.

- 2. Launch the **Restore Wizard**.
- 3. On the Restore Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 4. On the Browse for Archive page you need to specify the required backup image. So you should take the following steps to do that:
  - Select **Network** as a backup destination;



- Map a network disk where your archives are placed:
  - Call the Map Network Drive dialog by clicking the appropriate button;

Look in: 🗾 Netwo	rk	•	👼 🎽 💈			
Name					Size	Date
🤐 🔜 Network						
	0	Map Network Di	rive	?	×	
	A network share:	á <b>▼</b>				
		[	<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> an	cel	

- Click the standard browse button [...] to browse for the required network share or manually enter a path to it;

- Define a letter from the pull-down list of available drive letters;

- Click the Connect as user button at the foot of the dialog page to specify a user name and password to access the selected network share if necessary.

You can also map a network disk with Network Configurator.

• Choose the required archive in the browser-like window. The Archive File Details section displays a short description of the selected image.

Name			Size	Date	•
🖻 - 📴 pool (\\server2) (Z	:)				
🗄 🕛 Audio				3/6/2013 4:23:25 AM	
🕂 🛄 !				4/16/2013 12:29:46 AM	
🕂 🖟 🐌 !Backup Stora	ge			10/10/2013 12:52:24 AM	
鷆 arc_09101	13125156058			10/10/2013 12:51:36 AM	
🚊 🔐 arc_09101	13133756622			10/10/2013 1:43:35 AM	
🕂 - 퉲 diff_1	010130840415		10/10/2013 2:00:08 AM		
🗋 arc_0	910131337566	i22.pbf	4.7 MB	10/9/2013 6:38:02 AM	
arc_0	910131337566	i22.pfi 😼	576 KB	10/9/2013 6:38:02 AM	
<sup>l</sup> 🔊 arc_0	910131337566	522.pfm	1.6 KB	10/9/2013 6:38:02 AM	-
Switch to Archive List View					_
- Archive File Details					
[	Name:	New Volume (E:)			
	Comment:	[No comment is available]			
	Volume label:	New Volume			
	File system:	NTFS	Total size:	10.9 GB	
	Used space:	39 MB	Free space:	10.9 GB	
	File:	Z:/!Backup Storage//arc 09	91013133756	622.pbf	
	1 110.				

5. The What to Restore page displays detailed information about the contents of the archive. Select the required item to restore. In our case it is the first partition of the disk.

Please select one of the object(s) to restore:

Name		Туре	File system	Size	Used
📋 🗐 Basic MBR Hard Disk 2 (VMware	, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk D	Internal Hard Disk Drive	e	750 GB	
🕂 🕞 Local Disk		Primary	NTFS	499.6 GB	9.7 GB
🗄 🕞 Local Disk (🖓		Primary	NTFS	250.3 GB	72.5 MB
Archive Details					
Name:	Local Disk				
Volume label	: [No label]				
File system:	NTFS	Total size: 499	.6 GB		
Used space:		Free space: 489			
Used space.	5.1 GD	Theo space. How	.5 40		

6. On the Where to Restore page specify a hard disk, then one of its partitions to restore the image to (if several in your computer). By default, the program offers to restore the archive exactly where it belongs. That's what we actually need.

Please select a place you would like to restore the archive to. Note that if you select an existing hard disk or partition, its content will be **deleted** and replaced with the one from the archive.

Basic MBR Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)				
280.3 GB NTFS Total size: 280.3 GB	219.3 GB			
Used: 60.6 GB Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 <mark>Free: 219.6 GB</mark>	Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)			



All contents on the partition selected for restoring purposes will be deleted during the operation.

7. On the Restore Results page you can see the resulted disk layout. Besides there's the possibility to change size of the partition and its location if necessary as well as assign a particular drive letter. If you've got to do with a 64-bit Windows configured to the uEFI boot mode, the **Switch EFI to boot from destination drive** option will become available for you to define what instance of Windows OS you'd like to boot from once the operation is over. Anyway you can specify a bootable device at any time through <u>Boot Corrector</u>.

152

Your hard disk after the changes:

Basic MBR Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)					
Image: Contract of the second system         Image: Contract of the se	219.3 GB				
Geometry Restore Options					
Please specify the size of the restored partition: 19699	6 🚽 10263 MB - 196996 MB				
Please specify size of free space before the partition:					
Please specify size of free space after the partition:	0 MB				
Partition Restore Options					
Assian the following drive letter:					

- 8. On the next page of the wizard confirm the operation by selecting the appropriate option.
- In the Progress window you can see in real-time a detailed report on all actions carried out by the program. Mark the checkbox at the bottom of the window to automatically switch off the computer on the successful accomplishment of the restore operation.
- 10. After completing the operation close the wizard, and then reboot the computer.

### For pVHD images

1. Start up the computer from the WinPE recovery media.

Û

Please use Boot Media Builder to prepare the WinPE recovery environment, which you can get here: <u>www.paragon-software.com/my-account/</u>.

To automatically boot from the recovery media please make sure the on-board BIOS is set up to boot from CD/USB first.

- 2. Select Switch to Full Scale Launcher, then click the Restore from VD item of the Wizards menu.
- 3. On the Restore Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 4. On the Browse for Archive page you need to specify the required backup image:
  - Map a network disk where your archives are placed:
    - Call the Map Network Drive dialog by clicking the appropriate button;

153

Specify a VD Container to restore

L	ook in: 📴 Local Disk (C:) 🗾 😴 🎽 🛃	
Γ	Name	_
	Map Network Drive ? ×	
F		
	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	

<no< td=""><td>archive</td><td>se</td><td>lecl</td><td>ted&gt;</td></no<>	archive	se	lecl	ted>

- Click the standard browse button [...] to browse for the required network share or manually enter a path to it;

- Define a letter from the pull-down list of available drive letters;

- Click the Connect as user button at the foot of the dialog page to specify a user name and password to access the selected network share if necessary.

You can also map a network disk with Network Configurator.

• Choose the required archive in the browser-like window. The Archive File Details section displays a short description of the selected image. If you need more information on the selected backup object, please click the corresponding link at the bottom of the section. Click **Next** to proceed.

Specify a VD Co	ntainer to restore					
Look in: 📘 N	etwork Storage (\\server2\pool) (Z:) 📃 🧔 💥 💈					
Name		Size	Date 🔺			
÷. 🌗	inc_1_0_1		10/29/2013 8:15:03 AM			
🛉 👘 🛄	inc_1_0_3		10/29/2013 8:18:17 AM			
🛉 🕂 🛄	inc_2_1_2		10/29/2013 8:17:37 AM			
·	Backup_HDD0_20131029_0713.pfi	96 KB	10/29/2013 8:18:18 AM 💌			
Files of <u>type</u> :	/D Container files		•			
Switch to Archive	e List View					
_ Archive File D	etails					
Name:	Backup_HDD0_20131029_0713					
Comment:	Comment: Backup_image_20131029_0713					
File:	File: Z:/Backup_HDD0_20131029_0713/Backup_HDD0_20131029_0713.pfi					
Туре:	Type: Full VD Container					
Parent:	No					
Creation date:	10/29/2013 8:02:57 AM					
View VD conta	ainer detailed structure					

5. The What to Restore page displays detailed information about the contents of the archive. Select the required item to restore.

Name		Туре	File system	Size	Used
🗄 - j Backup_HDD0_201310	29_0713	VD Archive	,	11.5 GB (12,362,911,744 Bytes	)
🗄 - 📴 Basic MBR Hard Dis	sk 0 (PVHC	) i Virtual Hard Disk Drive		500 GB	l
🔄 System Reserve	ed	Primary	NTFS	350 MB	256.8 ME
🕞 Local Disk		Primary	NTFS	21.2 GB	10.5 GE
SNew Volume	5	Primary	NTFS	478.4 GE	4.9 GE
Archive Details					
Archive Details	ne:	Local Disk			
Nam	ne: ime label:				
Volu	ıme label:		Total	size: 21.2 GB	
Volu File	ıme label:	[No label] NTFS		size: 21.2 GB space: 10.6 GB	

Please select hard disk or partition to restore. If you need to restore several objects at once please use Linux-based Recovery Media.



If you need to restore several backup objects from a pVHD image in one operation, please use the Linux-based recovery media.

6. On the Where to Restore page specify a hard disk, then one of its partitions to restore the image to (if several in your computer). By default, the program offers to restore the archive exactly where it belongs. That's what we actually need.

Specify where you'd like to restore

Basic MBR Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)           Image: State of the sta
Basic GPT Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)
(Unallocated) 499.9 GB
Basic MBR Hard Disk 2 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)
(Unallocated) 749.9 GB
Basic MBR Hard Disk 3 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)
Object details
Name: Local Disk (C:)
Volume label: [No label]
File system: NTFS Total size: 21.2 GB
Used space: 10.6 GB Free space: 10.5 GB



All contents on the partition selected for restoring purposes will be deleted during the operation.

7. On the Restore Results page you can see the resulted disk layout. Besides there's the possibility to change size of the partition and its location if necessary as well as assign a particular drive letter. If you've got to do with a 64-bit Windows configured to the uEFI boot mode, the **Switch EFI to boot from destination drive** option will become available for you to define what instance of Windows OS you'd like to boot from once the operation is over. Anyway you can specify a bootable device at any time through <u>Boot Corrector</u>.

Basic MBR Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)				
New Volume (E:) 478.4 GB NTFS				
Geometry Restore Options				
Please specify the size of the restored partition: 21721 🚖 10835 MB - 21721 MB				
Please specify size of free space before the partition: 🛛 🏯 0 MB				
Please specify size of free space after the partition: 👔 🗍 🗂 🗍 0 MB				
Partition Restore Options				

- 8. Click **Finish** to complete the wizard, then apply the pending changes.
- In the Progress window you can see in real-time a detailed report on all actions carried out by the program. Mark the checkbox at the bottom of the window to automatically switch off the computer on the successful accomplishment of the restore operation.
- 10. After completing the operation, please reboot the computer.

To make Windows bootable on different hardware, please additionally complete the <u>P2P</u> Adjust OS Wizard.

## Restoring a system partition from a local drive

Let's assume that your operating system gives trouble after having installed brand new software. But you've got a backup of the system partition on a local disk. That's just enough to easily roll it back to the point when run smoothly.

To restore your system partition from a backup image located on a local disk, please do the following:

1. Click the Backup & Restore tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Restore.



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

- 2. On the Restore Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 3. On the Browse for Archive page, specify the required archive:
  - By clicking the **Switch to Archive List View** link, you can see a list of images contained in the Archive Database (if any).

Туре	Creation Dat	e 🗸 🔤	Source Object		Size	Archive Size 🔺
	10/10/2013	7:18:58 AM	File-level Archive		0 Bytes	119
-	10/10/2013	7:18:24 AM	File-level Archive		13 KB	24{
	10/10/2013	7:11:42 AM	3asic MBR Hard Disk 3 (VMware, VMware Virtua	al S SCSI Disk Dev)	120 GB	4.
Ð	10/10/2013	7:08:11 AM	3asic MBR Hard Disk 3 (VMware, VMware Virtua	al S SCSI Disk Dev)	120 GB	5
7	10/10/2013	7:00:47 AM	File-level Archive		71.9 MB	
-	10/10/2013	6:55:43 AM	File-level Archive		24 KB	38(
	10/10/2013	6:54:26 AM	File-level Archive		71.9 MB	8
7	10/10/2013	6:48:07 AM	File-level Archive		71.9 MB	
3	10/10/2013	2:17:49 AM	New Volume (G:)		14.2 GB	
9	10/10/2013	2:17:19 AM	New Volume (G:)		14.2 GB	2:
9	10/9/2013 1	1:29:07 PM	Local Disk (C:)		477.7 GB	2
7	10/9/2013 1	1:22:19 PM	File-level Archive		24 KB	38:
-	10/9/2013 1	1:17:38 PM	File-level Archive		589.5 KB	-
•						•
witch to F	File View					
Archive	File <u>D</u> etails ——					
	[	Name:	Local Disk (C:)			
		Comment:	[No comment is available]			
1		Volume label:	[No label]			
(		File system:	NTFS Total	size: 477.7 GB		
		Used space:	32.6B Free	space: 445.6 GB		
		File:	C:/arc_101013062903344/arc_101013062903	•		

To get a clear-cut picture on properties of the required image, just click on it and the section below will (i.e. Archive File Details) display a short description.



To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

• By clicking the **Switch to File View** link, you can find the required image in the browser-like window. The section below (i.e. Archive File Details) will also display a short description of the selected image.

Name				Size	Date	
arc_091	013125156058.p	bf		5.1 GB	10/9/2013 6:00:28 AM	-
	013125156058.p	б		28.9 MB	10/9/2013 6:00:23 AM	
<sup>l</sup> 🔊 arc_091	013125156058.p	fm		110.3 KB	10/9/2013 6:00:27 AM	
🕂 🕀 📔 arc_091013	131559760				10/9/2013 10:37:14 PM	
🕂 🕀 🔒 arc_091013	133756622				10/9/2013 6:38:02 AM	
🕂 🕀 📔 arc_091013	140817551				10/10/2013 7:17:43 AM	
🕂 🕀 📗 arc_091013	140825801				10/10/2013 7:18:23 AM	
🕂 🕀 📗 arc_101013					10/9/2013 10:32:29 PM	
🕴 🕀 🎽 arc_101013					10/9/2013 11:14:51 PM	
🕴 🕀 🎽 arc_101013					10/9/2013 11:53:11 PM	
🕴 🕀 🎽 arc_101013					10/10/2013 2:15:43 AM	
🗄 🕀 🎽 arc_101013					10/10/2013 2:17:49 AM	
🕂 🖳 arc_101013					10/10/2013 7:22:40 AM	
🕴 🕀 arc_101013	141139475				10/10/2013 7:12:58 AM	1
witch to Archive List Vie	W					
- Archive File <u>D</u> etails —	Name:	Local Disk (C:)				
	Comment:	[No comment is available]				
	Volume label:	[No label]				
$( \rightarrow )$	File system:	NTFS	Total size:	499.6 GB		
	Used space:	10.5 GB	Free space:	489.1 GB		
	Osca space.					



To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

4. On the Where to Restore page specify a hard disk, then one of its partitions to restore the image to (if several in your computer). By default, the program offers to restore the archive exactly where it belongs. That's what we actually need.

deleted and replaced with the one from the archive.				
Basic MBR Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)				
Local Disk (C:)	🛛 🕘 Backup Capsule			
280.3 GB NTFS	219.3 GB			

Please select a place you would like to restore the archive to. Note that if you select an existing hard disk or partition, its content will be

All contents on the partition selected for restoring purposes will be deleted during the operation.

5. On the Restore Results page you can see the resulted disk layout. Besides there's the possibility to change size of the partition and its location if necessary as well as assign a particular drive letter.

158

Your hard disk after the changes:

Basic MBR Hard Disk 2 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)						
Local Disk						
749.9 GB NTFS						
Geometry Restore Options						
Please specify the size of the restored partition:	767999 🛨 10263 MB - 767999 MB					
Please specify size of free space before the partition:	х 🖸 🚔 ОМВ					
Please specify size of free space after the partition:	0 🚔 ОМВ					

- 6. Complete the wizard and then apply the pending changes.
- 7. The program will require the system restart to accomplish the operation in a special boot-up mode. Click the appropriate button to agree.
- 8. In the Progress window you can see in real-time a detailed report on all actions carried out by the program.

After completing the operation the program will automatically reboot the computer.

This operation can also be accomplished with our recovery media.

To make Windows bootable on different hardware, please additionally complete the <u>P2P</u> <u>Adjust OS Wizard</u>.

## Restoring a dual boot Mac from an external USB drive

Let's assume that your Mac fails to boot because of a hard disk malfunction. But you've got a backup of your hard disk on an external USB drive. Just replace the failed disk with a new one and carry out a bare metal restore.

To restore a dual boot Mac from a backup image located on an external USB drive, please do the following:

1. Start up the computer from our Linux/DOS recovery media.

Please use Recovery Media Builder or Boot Media Builder to prepare Paragon's recovery environments on CD/DVD, flash, or in an ISO-image. You can get these utilities here: <u>www.paragon-software.com/my-account/</u>.

To automatically boot from the recovery media please make sure the on-board BIOS is set up to boot from CD/USB first.

- 2. Connect an external USB drive to the computer.
- 3. Restart the computer.
- 4. In the boot menu select **Normal Mode** to use the Linux recovery environment, since it's the only mode that enables to work with USB devices.



By default the Normal Mode will be automatically initiated after a 10 second idle period.

5. In the Linux launch menu select the Simple Restore Wizard.

- 6. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 7. On the What to Restore page, click the standard browse button [...] to find the required archive. When done, double click on it to select.

	Select archive.	
Look in:	arc_091013131559760	v 💿 🔁
	1013062156703 1013131559760.pbf	
File name:	arc_091013131559760.pbf	Open
File type:	Archive files (*.pbf)	✓ <u>C</u> ancel
Help (F1)	< <u>B</u> ack	Next > <u>C</u> ancel

8. On the Image Properties page, make sure that you select the correct image by viewing the provided information about the archive.

Disk pre *: NTF		Free				
Volume	Туре	File System	Size	Used	Volume label	
Basic	Hard Disk 3 (	Size 120 GB)				
*:	Primary	NTFS	14.3 GB	164 MB	New Volume	
*:	Primary	NTFS	8.4 GB	8.9 MB	New Volume	
Archived	letails:					^
Type: Image of the hard disk Archive path: /mnt/disk/sdb2/Img_D3.p Created: 2013 Oct 10 Thd 04:49:3						

To continue restore process, click Next.

9. On the next page specify a hard disk to restore the image to.

De	asic Hard [ *: Free	Disk 2 (VMwa	are Virtual) - 750 (	GB				
Ba	asic Hard [	Disk 3 (VMwa	are Virtual) - 120 (	ЗB				-
•	9	*: Free	•					
Ba	sic Hard D	isk 3	✓ Mo	del VMware V	/irtual, Size 120	GB		
	sic Hard D Volume	isk 3 Type	→ Mo	del VMware V	virtual, Size 120 Volume label	GB Active	Hidden	
							Hidden	
N	Volume	Туре	File System	Size	Volume label	Active		



All contents on disk selected for restoring purposes will be deleted during the operation.

10. On the Restore Summary page you can see your hard disk layout before and after the operation. Click the Next button to initiate the restore process.

	View changes on	Basic Hard Disk 3
Your disk before	operations:	
*: NTFS *:	*: Free	
Your disk after o	perations:	
*: NTFS *:	*: Free	

11. In the Progress window you can see in real-time a detailed report on all actions carried out by the program.

Operations list		Sul	operation progre	ess	
1: Restore partition or disk					
		C	peration progres	s	
	Copied so far:	8.9 MB	Read so far:	14.0 MB (14.0 MB/	s)
			Write so far:	14.0 MB (14.0 MB/	s)
			Overall progress	i	
	Time elapsed:	00:00:06	Time to finis	sh: <b>00:00:00</b>	
Restore Disk 3 from file: /mnt/dis	k/sdb2/Img_D3.pl	bf			^
Opening archive Img_D3_0300p	.000				
Restore Primary partition 0 (dis	3) from file: /mnt/	disk/sdb2/I	mg_D3_0300p.0	00	
Data writing					
Opening archive Img_D3_0301					
Restore Primary partition 1 (dis	(3) from file: /mnt/	disk/sdb2/I	mg_D3_0301p.0	00	
Data writing					~
	C	lose			

12. After completing the operation close the wizard, and then reboot the computer.

## **Restoring a file increment**

Let's assume that you're busy with developing some project and you make file increments of it on a day-to-day basis not to lose valuable information. So you've got a file backup chain. One day you understand that the job of the last three days is a complete and utter failure. Don't give up – recover your project to the state when everything's ok.

To restore a file increment, please do the following:

1. Click the **Backup & Restore** tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select **Restore**.



There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

- 2. On the Restore Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 3. On the Browse for Archive page, specify the required file increment:
  - By clicking the **Switch to Archive List View** link, you can see a list of images contained in the Archive Database (if any).

省 Show all	- 6		B:					
Туре	Creation Date 🛛 🗌	7	Source Object	Size	Archive Size	Flags		(•
	10/10/2013 6:55:	43 AM	File-level Archive	24 KB	389 Bytes	8		
	10/10/2013 6:54:	26 AM	File-level Archive	71.9 MB	85.9 KB	8	J	
	10/10/2013 6:48:	07 AM	File-level Archive	71.9 MB	4.8 MB	80	3	
<b>S</b>	10/10/2013 2:17:	49 AM	New Volume (G:)	14.2 GB	38 KB	8	3	
5 5 6 7	10/10/2013 2:17:	19 AM	New Volume (G:)	14.2 GB	22.7 MB		I.	
<b>S</b>	10/9/2013 11:29:	07 PM	Local Disk (C:)	477.7 GB	26.7 GB		30	;
	10/9/2013 11:22:	19 PM	File-level Archive	24 KB	389 Bytes		3	
	10/9/2013 11:17:	38 PM	File-level Archive	589.5 KB	4.9 KB	}~	3	
	10/9/2013 11:15:	18 PM	File-level Archive	293.5 MB	165.5 MB		3	
	10/9/2013 11:09:	02 PM	File-level Archive	24 KB	389 Bytes		I.	
9	10/9/2013 7:08:2	8 AM	NEW VOLUME	350 MB	1.8 MB		I.	
8	10/9/2013 7:08:2	0 AM	Local Disk	9 MB	30.8 KB		I.	
<b>9</b> <b>9</b>	10/9/2013 6:38:0	IO AM	New Volume (E:)	10.9 GB	4.7 MB		Ц,	-
4								
Switch to File	View							
- Archive File	e <u>D</u> etails ———							
Total size:	24 KB (24,576 B)	ytes)	Backup date: 1	0/10/2013 6:55:	43 AM			
Archive size	e: 389 Bytes							
Comment:			[No comment i	s available]				
File:			C:/arc_091013	314081755177a	rchive.pfi			
Base archiv	/e:		0817551/arc_1	10101306083974	9/FL00000000000000	000000	Varchiv	e.pfi

To get a clear-cut picture on properties of the required image, just click on it and the section below will (i.e. Archive File Details) display a short description.



To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

• By clicking the **Switch to File View** link, you can find the required image in the browser-like window. The section below (i.e. Archive File Details) will also display a short description of the selected image.

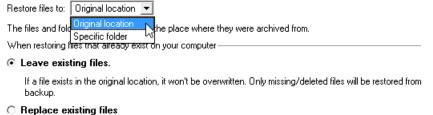
Name				Size	Date	
🗄 - 📴 Local Disk (C:)						
🛓 🗄 arc_091013	125156058				10/9/2013 11:17:27	7 PM
🗄 - <u>)</u> arc_091013	131559760				10/9/2013 10:37:14	1 PM
🕂 🕀 📔 arc_091013	133756622				10/9/2013 6:38:02.	AM
🕂 🖳 arc_091013	140817551			10/9/2013 11:08:51	PM	
🗄 - <u>))</u> arc_091013	140825801				10/10/2013 6:51:48	3 AM
🗄 🕀 📔 arc_101013	053218496				10/9/2013 10:32:29	∃PM f
🗄 - <u>   </u> arc_101013	061434390				10/9/2013 11:14:51	I PM
🕂 🖳 arc_101013	062903344				10/9/2013 11:53:11	PM
🗄 - 퉲 arc_101013	091536750				10/10/2013 2:15:43	
📄 퉲 arc_101013					10/10/2013 2:17:49	
T 🦛 💻	013091744875				10/10/2013 2:17:52	
	1010130917448				3 10/10/2013 2:17:52	
i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	1010130917448	75.pfm		3.1 KE	3 10/10/2013 2:17:52	2 AM .
vitch to Archive List Vie	W					
Archive File <u>D</u> etails —						
	Name:	New Volume (G:)				
	Comment:	No comment				
	Volume label:	New Volume				
	File system:	NTFS	Tota	al size:	14.2 GB	
	Used space:	163.8 MB	Free	space:	14.1 GB	
	File:	C:/arc 101013091716	2507 7444	101013	091744975 pbf	

162



To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

4. On the How to Restore page specify the way your archive will be restored. In our case we'd rather restore contents of the backup to its original location with replacing existing files as well.



> Replace existing files

ALL selected files will be replaced with files from backup.

- 5. Complete the wizard and then apply the pending changes.
- 6. In the Progress window you can see in real-time a detailed report on all actions carried out by the program.



## Restoring a file increment to a partition backup

Let's assume that your operating system gives trouble because of a virus attack. But you've got a backup of your system partition on a local disk. Besides you make file increments of your documents and e-mail database to that backup on a regular basis. That's just enough to easily roll everything back to the point when run smoothly.

To restore your system partition with a file increment from a backup image located on a local disk, please do the following:

1. Click the **Backup & Restore** tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select **Restore**.

There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

- 2. On the Restore Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 3. On the Browse for Archive page, specify the required file increment archive to your system partition backup:
  - By clicking the **Switch to Archive List View** link, you can see a list of images contained in the Archive Database (if any).

Туре	Creation Date 🛛 🗸	Source Object	Size	Archive Size	Flags		Comment	Mounted
	10/10/2013 6:48:07 AM	File-level Archive	71.9 MB	4.8 MB	80	7		1*
ው ው ው ው ው ው	10/10/2013 2:17:49 AM	New Volume (G:)	14.2 GB	38 KB	8	3	No co	1×
3	10/10/2013 2:17:19 AM	New Volume (G:)	14.2 GB	22.7 MB		3		1×
3	10/9/2013 11:29:07 PM	Local Disk (C:)	477.7 GB	26.7 GB		70		1*
-	10/9/2013 11:22:19 PM	File-level Archive	24 KB	389 Bytes		3		1×
5	10/9/2013 11:17:38 PM	File-level Archive	589.5 KB	4.9 KB	} <del>,</del>	3		1×
-	10/9/2013 11:15:18 PM	File-level Archive	293.5 MB	165.5 MB		3		1×
-	10/9/2013 11:09:02 PM	File-level Archive	24 KB	389 Bytes		3		1*
3	10/9/2013 7:08:28 AM	NEW VOLUME	350 MB	1.8 MB		3		1*
3	10/9/2013 7:08:20 AM	Local Disk	9 MB	30.8 KB		3		1*
19 (19 (19 (19 (19 (19 (19 (19 (19 (19 (	10/9/2013 6:38:00 AM	New Volume (E:)	10.9 GB	4.7 MB		3		1×
3	10/9/2013 6:16:13 AM	Local Disk (C:)	477.7 GB	5.2 GB		]()		1×
3	10/9/2013 5:52:57 AM	Local Disk (C:)	499.6 GB	5.1 GB		]()		1*
witch to F	ile View							
Archive	File <u>D</u> etails ————							
Total size	e 71.9 MB (75,470,833 By	tes) Backup date	: 10/10/201:	3 6:48:07 AM				
Archive s	ize: 4.8 MB (5,134,266 Byte:	5)						
Comment	<u>t</u>	[No comme	ent is available	e]				

To get a clear-cut picture on properties of the required image, just click on it and the section below will (i.e. Archive File Details) display a short description.

C:/arc\_091013140825801/arc\_091013140825801.pbf

E

To know more on the subject, please consult the <u>Viewing Image Properties</u> chapter.

• By clicking the **Switch to File View** link, you can find the required image in the browser-like window. The section below (i.e. Archive File Details) will also display a short description of the selected image.

Base archive:

Look in: [ El Local Disk (C:)

-

💥 🥊

Name		Size	Date	4
			10/9/2013 10:37:14 PM	
			10/9/2013 6:38:02 AM	
arc_091013140817551			10/9/2013 11:08:51 PM	
🖶 🌆 arc_091013140825801			10/10/2013 6:48:04 AM	
🚊 🔛 DIFF130258864840000000			10/10/2013 6:48:04 AM	
📄 🔜 FL000000000000000000000000000000000000			10/10/2013 6:48:07 AM	
📄 archive.pfi		4.8 MB	10/10/2013 6:48:07 AM	
archive.pfp		23 KB	10/10/2013 6:48:07 AM	
L 🚺 task_file.pft		40 Bytes	10/10/2013 6:48:04 AM	
📄 arc_091013140825801.pbf		1.8 MB	10/9/2013 7:08:29 AM	
📄 arc_091013140825801.pfi		576 KB	10/9/2013 7:08:29 AM	
🔊 arc_091013140825801.pfm		1.5 KB	10/9/2013 7:08:29 AM	
ianc_101013053218496			10/9/2013 10:32:29 PM	
vitch to Archive List View				
Archive File <u>D</u> etails ————————————————————————————————————				
Total size: 71.9 MB (75,470,833 Bytes)	Backup date: 10/10/2013 6:48:07 AM			
Archive size: 4.8 MB (5,134,266 Bytes)				
Comment:	[No comment is available]			
File:	C:/arc_091013140825801/DIFF13025886484	0000000/	/archive.pfi	
Base archive:	C:/arc 091013140825801/arc 09101314082	5801.obf		



To know more on the subject, please consult the Viewing Image Properties chapter.

4. On the How to Restore File Complement page select whether you want to restore both, the partition archive and the desired file increment or just the file increment. In our case we choose the first option.

You have selected file complement to a volume arhchive. This archive can be restored together with the volume, or you can only restore the files, saved in the file archive.

Restore all volume data, then files

C Restore only files

A Note: if you choose to restore archive together with a volume, all data on the target volume will be lost. The contents of the volume will be completely replaced from archive.

5. On the Where to Restore page specify a hard disk, then one of its partitions to restore the image to (if several in your computer). By default, the program offers to restore the archive exactly where it belongs. That's what we actually need.

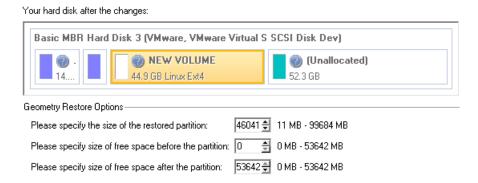
Please select a place you would like to restore the archive to. Note that if you select an existing hard disk or partition, its content will be **deleted** and replaced with the one from the archive.

Basic MBR Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware)	√irtual S SCSI Disk Dev)
Local Disk (C:)	Unallocated)
280.3 GB NTFS	219.3 GB
Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware)	Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)
🔽 🕘 Local Disk (F:)	
499.6 GB NTFS	



All contents on the partition selected for restoring purposes will be deleted during the operation.

6. On the Restore Results page you can see the resulted disk layout. Besides there's the possibility to change size of the partition and its location if necessary as well as assign a particular drive letter.



- 7. Complete the wizard and then apply the pending changes.
- 8. The program will require the system restart to accomplish the operation in a special boot-up mode. Click the appropriate button to agree.
- 9. In the Progress window you can see in real-time a detailed report on all actions carried out by the program.

After completing the operation the program will automatically reboot the computer.



This operation can also be accomplished with our recovery media.

## Copying of data from the corrupted system disk to another hard disk

To retrieve valuable information from your hard disk and copy it to another hard disk when the system fails to boot, please do the following:

- 1. Connect the second hard disk to the computer.
- 2. Start up the computer from our Linux/DOS recovery media.

Please use Recovery Media Builder or Boot Media Builder to prepare Paragon's recovery environments on CD/DVD, flash, or in an ISO-image. You can get these utilities here: <u>www.paragon-software.com/my-account/</u>.

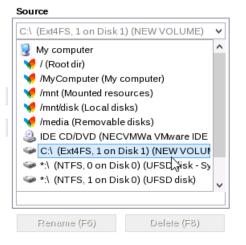
To automatically boot from the recovery media please make sure the on-board BIOS is set up to boot from CD/USB first.

3. In the boot menu select Normal Mode to use the Linux recovery environment (more preferable) or Safe Mode to use the PTS DOS recovery environment (in case you've got problems with Linux). Moreover you've got the option to boot into the Low-Graphics Safe Mode (PTS DOS safe mode) to cope with a serious hardware incompatibility. In this case, only the minimal set of drivers will be included, like hard disk, monitor, and keyboard drivers. This mode has simple graphics and a simple menu.



By default the Normal Mode will be automatically initiated after a 10 second idle period.

- 4. In the Linux launch menu select the File Transfer Wizard. You can find the same wizard in PTS DOS as well.
- 5. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 6. Select a disk where the files you need are stored from the pull-down list in the right pane of the page.



7. Select files you want to copy and place them to Clipboard by pressing the left arrow-button.

Clipboard		Source		
Mindows/System (HDD0/Part1)		Windows		~
		🛅 SoftwareDistributior	1	^
		🚞 Speech		
		🚞 System		
	-	🚞 System32		
		🚞 SystemResources		
		🚞 SysWOW64		
		🛅 TAPI		
		🛅 Tasks		
		🛅 Temp		
		🛅 ToastData		
		🛅 tracing		~
Total data size: <b>n/a</b> Cal	с	Rename (F6)	Delete (F8)	

Click the Calc button to estimate the resulted data size.

8. On the Select Destination Type, choose the way the data will be stored. Select the **Save data to any local drive or a network share** item.

Please select how would you like to save the archive:

#### Save data to any local drives or a network share

#### 🔘 Burn data to CD/DVD/BD

Choose this option if you want the Wizard to burn the archive to CD/DVD/BD. You will be prompted to choose a drive.

9. On the Select Destination Path page, select a hard disk to copy the data to by pressing the standard browse button [...].

Select path	
Scient pain	
/mnt/disk/sdb2	
Space available on destination: 321 MB	
	Calc
Total data size: <b>n/a</b>	Calc

- 10. On the Transfer Summary page check all parameters of the operation. Click the Next button to accomplish the operation.
- 11. In the Progress window you can see in real-time a detailed report on all actions carried out by the program.

	Subo	peration progress	
	Ope	eration progress	
Copied so far:	11.8 MB		
	O١	/erall progress	
Time elapsed:	00:00:03	Time to finish:	00:00:00
- · ·	-	-	
	to "(HDD0/P	art1)/arc_091013131	1559 / 60/" - Item 2 (
	Time elapsed: _D3.pbf" to "(HDI _D3_0300p.000"	Ope Copied so far: <b>11.8 MB</b> Ov Time elapsed: <b>00:00:03</b> _D3.pbf" to "(HDD0/Part1)/arc _D3_0300p.000" to "(HDD0/P	Operation progress Copied so far: <b>11.8 MB</b> Overall progress

- 12. After the operation is completed, close the wizard by pressing the appropriate button.
- 13. Turn off the computer.

This operation can also be accomplished with our recovery media.

## Burning of data from the corrupted system disk to CD/DVD

To retrieve valuable information from your hard disk and burn it to CD/DVD when the system fails to boot, please do the following:

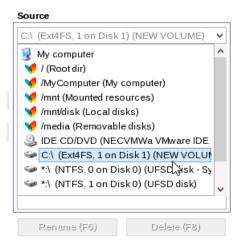
1. Start up the computer from our Linux/DOS recovery media.



2. In the boot menu select **Normal Mode** to use the Linux recovery environment, since it's the only mode that enables to burn CD/DVD discs.

By default the Normal Mode will be automatically initiated after a 10 second idle period.

- 3. In the Linux launch menu select the File Transfer Wizard. You can find the same wizard in PTS DOS as well.
- 4. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 5. Select a disk where the files you need are stored from the pull-down list in the right pane of the page.



6. Select files you want to copy and place them to Clipboard by pressing the left arrow-button.

Clipboard		Source		
Clipboard Windows/System (HDD0/Part1)		Source Windows SoftwareDistribution Speech System System32 SystemResources SysWOW64 TAPI Tasks Temp ToastData		
		tracing		•
Total data size: <b>n/a</b> Cal	5	Rename (F6)	Delete (F8)	

Click the Calc button to estimate the resulted data size.

7. On the Select Destination Type, choose the way the data will be stored. Select the Burn data to CD/DVD item.

Please select how would you like to save the archive:

O	Save data to any local drives or a network share
	Choose this option if you want to save your data to local
	mounted or physical partition, to USB or FireWare external
	drives and to a mounted network share. You will be prompted
	to choose a location you want to save the archive to.

### Burn data to CD/DVD/BD

Choose this option if you want the Wizard to burn the archive to CD/DVD/BD. You will be prompted to choose a drive.

8. On the Choose a Recorder page, select a recorder from the list of available devices and then set a volume label by entering it in the appropriate field.

Select a recorder to burn data to:

Vendor	Product	Туре
NECVMWar	VMware IDE CDR10	CD-R;CD-RW;D
Paragon	CD Burner Emulator	CD-R;CD-RW
Paragon	DVD Burner Emulator	DVD+R;DVD+F
<		>
Volume label	My Data	

- 9. On the Transfer Summary page check all parameters of the operation. Click the Next button to accomplish the operation.
- 10. In the Progress window you can see in real-time a detailed report on all actions carried out by the program.

Operations list		Subo	peration progress	
1: Transfer user data				
		Op	eration progress	
	Copied so far:	0.02 MB		
		0	verall progress	
	Time elapsed:	00:00:00	Time to finish:	00:00:00
Creating compilation image				
Used burner: VMware IDE CDR:				
Quick media erasing (it may take	e about a minute)			
Session opening				
Data burning				

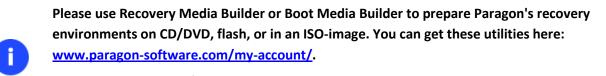
- 11. After the operation is completed, close the wizard by pressing the appropriate button.
- 12. Turn off the computer.

This operation can also be accomplished with our recovery media.

## Copying of data from a backup to the corrupted system partition

The system fails to boot since some files are damaged. If you have a backup of the system partition, you can recopy these files to make the system be operable again:

1. Start up the computer from our Linux/DOS recovery media.



To automatically boot from the recovery media please make sure the on-board BIOS is set up to boot from CD/USB first.

2. In the boot menu select **Normal Mode** to use the Linux recovery environment (more preferable) or **Safe Mode** to use the PTS DOS recovery environment (in case you've got problems with Linux). Moreover you've got the

option to boot into the **Low-Graphics Safe Mode** (PTS DOS safe mode) to cope with a serious hardware incompatibility. In this case, only the minimal set of drivers will be included, like hard disk, monitor, and keyboard drivers. This mode has simple graphics and a simple menu.

0

## By default the Normal Mode will be automatically initiated after a 10 second idle period.

- 3. In the Linux launch menu select the File Transfer Wizard. You can find the same wizard in PTS DOS as well.
- 4. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 5. Select a disk where the system backup is stored from the pull-down list in the right pane of the page.

Look in:	arc_09101313	1559760		v 🔁
🗀 🛅 arc_1010	13062156703			
him arc_0910	13131559760.	pbf N		
		13		
Rename	(F6)	New folder (F7)	Delete	(F8)

6. Double click on the required backup to open.



7. Select files you want to copy and place them to Clipboard by pressing the left arrow-button.

Clipboard	 Source		
🛅 /Windows/System (HDD0/Part1)	Windows		~
	SoftwareDistribution		^
	🛅 Speech 🛅 System		
	🚞 System32		
	SystemResources		
	SysWOW64		
	🛅 TAPI		
	🚞 Tasks		
	🚞 Temp		
	🚞 ToastData		
	🚞 tracing		¥
Total data size: 30.3 KB	Rename (F6)	Delete (F8)	

Click the Calc button to estimate the resulted data size.

8. On the Select Destination Type, choose the way the data will be stored. Select the **Save data to any local drive or a network share** item.

Please select how would you like to save the archive:

Save data to any local drives or a network share Choose this option if you want to save your data to local mounted or physical partition, to USB or FireWare external drives and to a mounted network share. You will be prompted to choose a location you want to save the archive to.

#### O Burn data to CD/DVD/BD

Choose this option if you want the Wizard to burn the archive to CD/DVD/BD. You will be prompted to choose a drive.

9. On the Select Destination Path page, select your system disk to copy the data to by pressing the standard browse button [...].

Select path ×	
Look in: D:\ (NTFS, 0 on Disk 3) (New Volume) ✓	from
Contraction in the second seco	
System Volume Information	
	alc
Rename (F0) New folder (F7) Delete (F8)	
File name: /mnt/disk/sdd1/ Select	
File type:     All files (*.*)     Cancel	
Help (F1) < <u>Back</u> <u>N</u> ext > Cano	el :

- 10. On the Transfer Summary page check all parameters of the operation. Click the Next button to accomplish the operation.
- 11. In the Progress window you can see in real-time a detailed report on all actions carried out by the program.

Operations list		Subo	peration progress	
1: Transfer user data				
		Op	eration progress	
	Copied so far:	0.1 MB		
		01	verall progress	
	Time elapsed:	00:00:00	Time to finish:	00:00:00
Transferring "/mnt/disk/sdb2/Img		D0/Part1)/" -	Item 1 of 1	
All operations have been finishe	ed			

12. After the operation is completed, close the wizard by pressing the appropriate button.

Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

## 13. Turn off the computer.



This operation can also be accomplished with our recovery media.

## Restoring separate files and folders from a backup

The program provides a very convenient option to access backup archives and restore only data you need (the so called selective restore functionality).

## **Restore Wizard**

To restore separate files and folders from a backup image with the Restore Wizard, please do the following:

1. Start up the computer from the WinPE recovery media.



To automatically boot from the recovery media please make sure the on-board BIOS is set up to boot from CD/USB first.

- 2. Launch the Restore Wizard.
- 3. On the Restore Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 4. On the Browse for Archive page choose the required archive in the browser-like window. The Archive File Details section displays a short description of the selected image.

Name				Size	Date	1
🗄 😔 Backup Capsule	on Hard Disk 0					
📮 🔂 arc_0910131	25156058				10/10/2013 6:55:53 PM	
🛓 🗄 🔂 DIFF130	2585900100000	00			10/10/2013 6:55:52 PM	
🗄 - 🚾 DIFF130	2585944700000	00			10/10/2013 6:55:54 PM	1
arc_091013125156058.pbf					10/10/2013 6:53:54 PM	
	013125156058.p				10/10/2013 6:53:56 PM	
	013125156058.p	fm		110.3 KB	10/10/2013 6:53:57 PM	
🚊 🔂 arc_1110131					10/10/2013 9:33:56 PM	
	013111635639.p				10/10/2013 9:33:57 PM	
📄 arc_111013111635639.pfi					10/10/2013 9:33:56 PM	
	013111635639_0				10/10/2013 9:33:49 PM	
	013111635639_0	• •			10/10/2013 9:33:49 PM	
arc_111	013111635639_0	J201p.000		8.7 MB	10/10/2013 9:33:56 PM	
witch to Archive List Vie	W					
Archive File <u>D</u> etails —						_
	Name:	Local Disk (C:)				
	Comment:	[No comment is available]				
	Volume label:	[No label]				
	File system:	NTFS	Total size:	499.6 GB		
	Used space:	10.5 GB	Free space:	489.1 GB		
	1					

5. On the next page specify what you need to extract from the backup by marking checkboxes next to the required data items. At the right lower corner of the window you can see the resulted amount of the selected data.

Click the check box next to any file or folder you want to restore from

Name	Туре	Size	
E- Stocal Disk (E:)	Partition	499.6 GB	
🖥 🖓 🔂 🔁 🖉			
🗄 🖳 🥅 🚾 \$Recycle.Bin			
🗄 ·· 🥅 🚾 arc_111013105844785			
🗄 🦳 🧫 Documents and Settings			
🗄 🦳 🚾 ImageStorage			
🕀 🦳 🧮 PerfLogs			
🗄 🦳 🧮 Program Files			
🌐 🖳 🧮 Program Data			
🗄 🖓 🥅 🧮 System Volume Information			
🕀 🔽 Users			
🕀 🖳 🧮 Windows			
🔲 📄 autoexec.bat	File	24 Bytes	
··· 🔽 📄 bootmgr	File	417.6 KB	
	File	1 Bytes	
··· 🔲 📄 checkvendor.mst	File	20 KB	
··· 🔲 📄 config.sys	File	10 Bytes	
··· 🔽 📄 pagefile.sys	File	1 GB	
🔽 📄 PAT_Dell_GUI_BMB_ea_xU.msi	File	75.5 MB	
	File	256 MR	_
To continue, click Next Data size to m	estore: less	s than 14.8 (	GB

6. On the How to Restore page specify the way the selected data will be restored. In our case we'd rather restore contents of the backup to its original location with replacing existing files as well.

Restore files to: Original location
The files and fold <mark>Original location set in the place where they were archived from. Specific folder set in the place where they were archived from. When restoring files that already exist on your computer set in the place where they were archived from set in the place where they were archived from set in the place where they were archived from set in the place where they were archived from set in the place where they were archived from set in the place where they were archived from set in the place where they were archived from set in the place where they were archived from set in the place where they were archived from set in the place where they were archived from set in the place where the place where they were archived from set in the place where they were archived from set in the place where the place where they were archived from set in the place where the place where they were archived from set in the place where the place where they were archived from set in the place where the place where they were archived from set in the place where the place where they were archived from set in the place where the place where they were archived from set in the place where the place where they were archived from set in the place where the place where the place were archived from set in the place where the place were archived from set in the place where the place were archived from set in the place were archived fro</mark>
• Leave existing files.

If a file exists in the original location, it won't be overwritten. Only missing/deleted files will be restored from backup.

C Replace existing files

ALL selected files will be replaced with files from backup.

7. On the Restore Summary page review all parameters of the operation and modify them if necessary.

Please overview the restore options. You can return to the corresponding page and change the options by clicking on title hyperlinks.

B (75,470,833 Bytes)
9B (235,588,853,760 Bytes)

- 8. On the next page of the wizard confirm the operation by selecting the appropriate option.
- 9. In the Progress window you can see in real-time a detailed report on all actions carried out by the program.
- 10. After completing the operation close the wizard, and then reboot the computer.



This operation can also be accomplished under Windows.

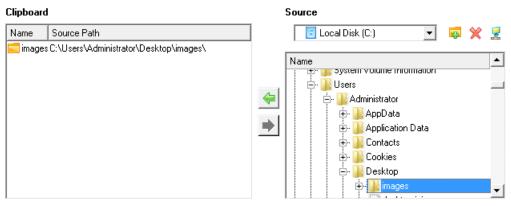
## File Transfer Wizard

To restore separate files and folders from a backup image with the File Transfer Wizard, please do the following:

 Call the popup menu for the required backup image (right click of the mouse button) in the Archive Database and then select the menu item: Restore File from Archive. Thus you automatically open it with the File Transfer Wizard.

💽 Show	archives 💽 🌱 Sh	ow all 💽 🔄 🚱	B B			
Туре	Creation Date 🛛 🗸	Source Object		Size	Archive Size	Flags
8	10/11/2013 4:16:55 AM	Basic MBR Hard Disk 2 (VM	Iware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	750 GB	5.1 GB	ą
	10/10/2013 7:18:58 AM	File-level Archive		O Dutes	119 Bytes	3
-	10/10/2013 7:18:24 AM	File-level Archive	Add an Archive to the Database	В	248 Bytes	je I
8	10/10/2013 7:11:42 AM	Basic MBR Hard Disk 3 (V	Delete the Archive from the Data	base B	44.7 MB	Ę
8	10/10/2013 7:08:11 AM	Basic MBR Hard Disk 3 (V	👔 Restore Files	В	57.8 MB	3
	10/10/2013 7:00:47 AM	File-level Archive	_	β	4.8 MB	je I
	10/10/2013 6:55:43 AM	File-level Archive	🚏 Incremental File Backup	β	389 Bytes	i I
	10/10/2013 6:54:26 AM	File-level Archive 🛛 🦂	🛃 Restore File From Archive	В	85.9 KB	<b>1</b>
	10/10/2013 6:48:07 AM	File-level Archive	5	71.5 MB	4.8 MB	je 📮
9	10/10/2013 2:17:49 AM	New Volume (G:)		14.2 GB	38 KB	i I
9	10/10/2013 2:17:19 AM	New Volume (G:)		14.2 GB	22.7 MB	ą

2. Select files you want to copy and place them to Clipboard by pressing the left arrow-button.



Total data size: 15.9 MB

3. On the Select Destination Type, choose the way the data will be stored. Select the **Save data to any local drive or a network share** item.

There are several ways the Wizard can store your data. Please select how would you like to save the data:

C Save data to physical partitions.

Burn the data to CD, DVD or BD.

4. On the Select Destination Path page, specify the exact place to copy the data to.

Please select the destination path where to save the data from clipboard.

Look in: 🛛 📴 Local Disk (C:	) 🛨 🧔 💥 🛃
Address: C:\	
Name	
🖮 🗟 Local Disk (C:)	
🗄 - 🕌 arc_09101312515	56058
🗄 - <u> a</u> rc_09101313155	59760
🗄 - <u>)</u> arc_09101313375	56622
🛓 - <u> a</u> rc_09101314081	7551
🗄 - <u> a</u> rc_09101314082	25801
Total data size:	15.9 MB

- Space available on destination: 219.6 GB
- 5. On the Transfer Summary page check all parameters of the operation. Click the Next button to accomplish the operation.

Please overview the transfer options. You can return to the corresponding page and change the options by clicking on title hyperlinks.

Objects to transfer	
Object(s) selected:	1
Total data size:	7.6 GB (8,248,732,638 Bytes)
Transfer destination	
Destination path:	C:V
Space available on destination:	219.4 GB (235,588,853,760 Bytes)
Overwrite existing files:	No

6. After the operation is completed, close the wizard by pressing the appropriate button.

## Volume Explorer

To restore separate files and folders from a backup image with Volume Explorer, please do the following:

1. Click the Volume Explorer tab on the Ribbon Panel;

- III -	Backup &	Restore	New Backup Format	Partitioning	Copy & Migration	Archive	es Schedule	Volume E	xplorer
🔄 Refres	h volumes ir	formation						d b	
Va	olume Explor	er							
🛷 Apply 🖇	🖄 Discard	🔍 View	Changes 猗 Undo 🍋	Redo 🔄 🔄 R	eload Disk Info	Generate S	icript 🕓 Save to	Scheduler	S Expre
Name				Size	Modified				
🕂 🕂 🛃 Driv	es								
🚊 🛃 Har	d Disks								
÷- 🖻	1. VMware,	VMware Vi	rtual S SCSI Disk Device	500 GB					
÷. 🗊	2. VMware,	VMware Vi	rtual S SCSI Disk Device	499.9 GB					
			rtual S SCSI Disk Device						
+. 🗔	4. VMware,	VMware Vi	rtual S SCSI Disk Device	120 GB					
🛨 - 🛃 Virtu	ual Drives								

2. Browse for the required archive and then open it by double click of the left mouse button.

Name	Size	Modified	
🗄 - 🔜 Drives			
🗄 - 🔜 Hard Disks			
🗄 🗐 1. VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Device	500 GB		
🚊 🗐 2. VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Device	500 GB		
🚊 💽 1. Primary NTFS (E:)	72.6 GB		
🖽 🚾 arc_disk3		10/16/2013 9:02:11 PM	
⊕- <mark>⊂</mark> arc_doc		10/16/2013 9:00:23 PM	
🕀 🔂 arc_image		10/16/2013 9:00:56 PM	
🚍 🚾 arc_system		10/16/2013 8:57:56 PM	
庄 - 🧫 inc_171013045750652		10/16/2013 8:57:56 PM	
🛅 arc_system.pbf	57 MB	10/16/2013 8:57:20 PM	
📄 arc_system.pfi	576 KB	10/16/2013 8:59:18 PM	
🦾 📄 arc_system.pfm	7.2 KB	10/16/2013 8:57:19 PM	
🖽 💳 System Volume Information		10/16/2013 8:23:03 PM	
🗄 🕞 🕞 2. Primary FAT 32 (F:)	20.9 GB		
🗄 🕞 3. Primary Ext2/Ext3/Ext4/Reiser	13 GB		
⊕ - 💽 4. Primary Ext2/Ext3/Ext4/Reiser	19.2 GB		
吏 🗐 3. VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Device	750 GB		
🗄 🗐 4. VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Device	120 GB		
🗄 - 🔜 Virtual Drives			

176

3. Call a context menu (right click of the mouse button) for a file/folder you need and then select the Export item.

Name	Size	Modified	
🗄 🛄 Drives			
🗄 🛄 Hard Disks			
🗄 🔄 1. VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Device	500 GB		
🗄 🕞 1. Primary NTFS	350 MB		
🗄 🕞 2. Primary NTFS (C:)	499.6 GB		
🗄 💳 \$Recycle.Bin		9/3/2013 1:49:11 PM	
🕀 🔂 Documents and Settings	-	722/2013 6:45:52 AM	
🕀 🚾 PerfLogs	Export	22/2013 7:22:35 AM	
🕀 💳 Program Files	Refresh	0/16/2013 8:18:50 PM	
🗄 🔚 🔚 Program Files (x86)		9/3/2013 1:54:48 PM	
🗄 🔚 Program Data		10/16/2013 8:21:08 PM	
🗄 🔚 System Volume Information		10/16/2013 8:18:29 PM	
🗄 - 💳 Users		9/3/2013 1:48:22 PM	
🗄 🔚 Windows		9/3/2013 9:43:00 AM	

4. Select a place on the disk where the file/folder will be extracted to.

Look in:	📄 Local Disk (C:) 🖃 🛛 🙀 🎽 💈	
	Address: C:\	
Disk Drives	Name	Da
DISK DIIVES	🚊 🖥 Local Disk (C:)	
	🕂 🛄 Utils	10
	🗄 🕕 🛄 arc_new	10
Network Places	🕂 🛺 PerfLogs	87:
1101110111110000	🕀 🛺 Program Files	10
	👳 🛺 Program Files (x86)	97:
	🕀 📴 Users	97:
	🗄 - 퉲 Windows	97:

5. Click the OK button to accomplish the operation.



The current version of the program does not enable to access pVHD images and file archives with Volume Explorer.

# **System Migration Scenarios**

## Migrating system to a new HDD (up to 2.2TB in size)

Let's assume that you've bought a new hard disk that is up to 2.2TB in capacity. It's faster and of much higher capacity than your current system disk, so it's quite natural you start thinking about system migration. We can help you do that.

To migrate your system to a hard disk that doesn't exceed the 2.2TB capacity limit, please do the following:

- 1. Connect both source and destination disks to the computer.
- 2. Turn on the computer.
- 3. Click the Copy & Migration tab on the Ribbon Panel, then select Copy Hard Disk.

There are other ways to start up this function, please consult the <u>Interface Overview</u> chapter to know more on the subject.

- 4. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 5. On the Select Hard Disk to Copy page, select a source disk (a hard disk you want to copy).

On this page, you can choose a hard disk you would like to copy. All partitions from this hard disk will be copied to the destination you will choose on the next page.

Basic MBR Hard Disk O (	VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)
📔 📄 🛞 Local Disk (	(C:)
499.6 GB NTFS	
Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (	VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)
	📕 🕢 (Unallocated)

6. On the Select Target Hard Disk page, select a destination disk (a hard disk to copy contents of the source disk).

Select a target hard disk. All data from the source hard disk will be copied there. During copy operation, target disk content will be  ${\bf deleted}.$ 

Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)
92.4 1 (Unallocated) 334.6 GB
Basic MBR Hard Disk 2 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)
(Unallocated) 749.9 GB
Basic MBR Hard Disk 3 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)
📕 🕘 (Unallocated)
119.9 GB



During the operation all contents of the destination disk will be deleted.

7. On the next page of the wizard, define the copy options. In our case we'd rather copy data with a proportional resize to occupy the entire disk. If you've got to do with a 64-bit Windows configured to the uEFI boot mode, the

**Create new EFI boot entry for destination drive** option will become available for you to define what instance of Windows OS you'd like to boot from once the operation is over. Anyway you can specify a bootable device at any time through <u>Boot Corrector</u>.

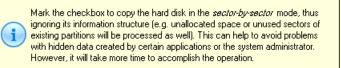
Choose copy options that suit best your task:

#### Copy options:

- HDD raw copy
- Partitions raw copy

#### **Resize options:**

- Remove free blocks between partitions
- Copy data and resize partitions proportionally



The 'Create new EFI boot entry for destination drive' option will be available to the user only if the target disk becomes Bootable GPT as a result of the migration process.

8. On the Revise Copy Results page review all parameters of the operation.

Original hard disk: Basic MBR Hard Disk 0 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev) Control Disk (C:) 499.6 GB NTFS Hard disk copy: Basic MBR Hard Disk 2 (VMware, VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev) Control Disk 749.6 GB NTFS Proportional resize - the copy will take 750 GB (100 % of target disk space) Min Copy Size: 10.8 GB Select the range of the disk space that will be occupied on the destination disk with copied partitions.

- 9. Complete the wizard and then apply the pending changes.
- 10. When copying is completed, shut down the computer.
- 11. Disconnect (physically) the source hard disk.
- 12. Boot the computer from the destination hard disk.

To make Windows bootable on different hardware, please additionally complete the <u>P2P</u> <u>Adjust OS Wizard</u>.

## Making system bootable on different hardware (P2P Adjust OS)

Let's assume you had to migrate to a new hardware platform. You connected your system hard disk to the brand new PC and tried to start up the operating system - you do know for sure now that this operation had been doomed to failure from the very beginning. With our program you can easily tackle this naughty problem.

Before you start, please make sure the following conditions are met:

- You've got drivers for the new hardware ready to use, not zipped or in .exe files.
- Your OS is unrolled on the new computer, not in a backup image.

To make a Windows physical system bootable on different hardware, please do the following:

1. Start up the computer from the WinPE recovery media.

Please use Boot Media Builder to prepare the WinPE recovery environment, which you can get here: <u>www.paragon-software.com/my-account/</u>.

To automatically boot from the recovery media please make sure the on-board BIOS is set up to boot from CD/USB first.

2. Launch the P2P Adjust OS Wizard.

The WinPE based environment offers excellent hardware support. However in case it doesn't have a driver for your disk controller, your hard disks will be unavailable. Please consult the <u>Adding specific drivers</u> scenario to know how to tackle this issue.

- 3. On the Wizard's Welcome page, click the Next button.
- 4. From the list of all found Windows systems (if several) select one you need to adjust to the new hardware. If you're willing to adjust them all, just re-launch this wizard for each.

OS	Volume	Label	Capacity
S Microsoft Windows XP	Local Disk (C:)	[No label]	20 GB
3			

5. There are two execution modes to choose from: **fully automatic** and **advance**. Below we will go set-by-step through the automatic scenario to show the whole process, and then take a closer look at <u>specifics of the</u> <u>advance scenario</u>.



- 6. Select Adjust the OS to the new hardware automatically.
- 7. The wizard will automatically accomplish all the necessary actions.

Process driver '\inf\ecwandd.inf' from Windows driver repository		

8. The only action that might be required from your side is to set a path to an additional driver repository in case the wizard has failed to find drivers for some boot critical devices in the built-in Windows repository. Generally together with new hardware you get its drivers for different operating systems on removable media (mostly CD or DVD). By collecting all these drivers in one folder you can let the wizard automatically pick and install only those required for your OS. Select Search for drivers in a specific folder.

The wizard has failed to find drivers for some devices.

What would you like to do?



Ignore all missing drivers. Continue to adjust the OS without injecting the missing drivers.

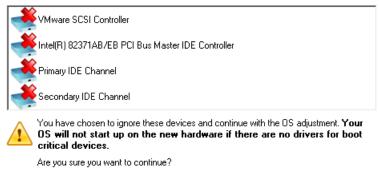
#### Which devices have missing drivers?

0

Click on the link at the bottom of the page to see what boot critical devices have no drivers. The wizard names all devices according to their model description, not some alphanumeric code, which is very convenient.

Though you've got the option to continue without injecting missing drivers for boot critical devices (The Ignore all missing drivers option), we strongly recommend you not to do it. Otherwise we cannot guarantee your Windows will start up on the new hardware.

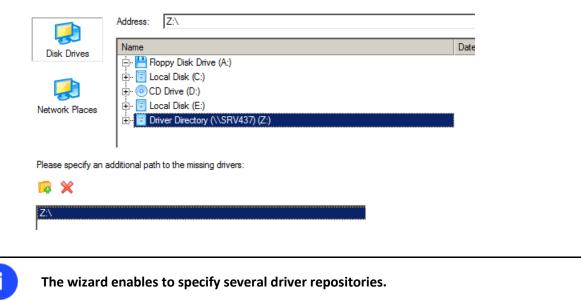
There are no drivers for the following devices:



- Tes, continue to adjust the OS without injecting drivers for these devices
- 10. The wizard can search for drivers on a local disk or a mapped network share. In our case it's on a network share, this is why we need to map it first.

Please specify an additional path to the missing drivers:	
🔁 🗙	
Add a folder to the drivers source list	
Look in: 🛛 💾 Floppy Disk Drive (A:) 💌 📪 🛠 🕵	
Address: A:\	
Name Name	Date
Disk Drives	
🔁 🔂 Local Disk (C:)	
Network Pla Denote leasting and the second s	
A network share : \\server2\pool\Driver Repository	
Map to drive letter : Z:	
Make permanent connection	
Connect as user	
Windows Security	
Enter Network Password Enter your password to connect to: server2	
Test  Test  Domain: 7-32-ENTERPRIZE  Remember my credentials	
🔕 Access is denied.	
OK Cancel	

11. When done, we can select it as target.



12. If the wizard has found all missing drivers, it will ask you to confirm the operation. Apply the changes to complete.

After the operation is completed the system will be bootable on the new hardware. After the startup, Windows will initiate reconfiguration of all Plug'n'Play devices. It's a standard procedure, so please don't worry and prepare the latest drivers at this step to get the most out of the system.

### Advance scenario specifics

1. To launch the advance mode, select Set parameters for the OS adjustment.



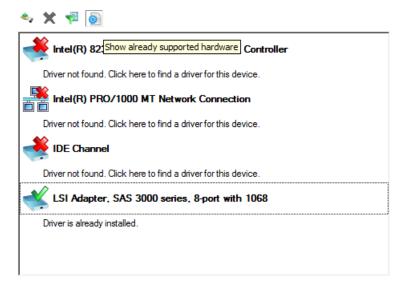
2. When setting additional driver repositories, you can specify how to process drivers for found hardware.

Please specify an additional path to the missing drivers:

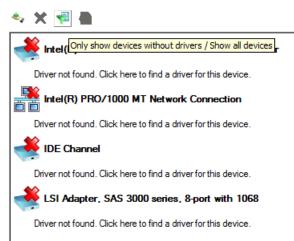
Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

182

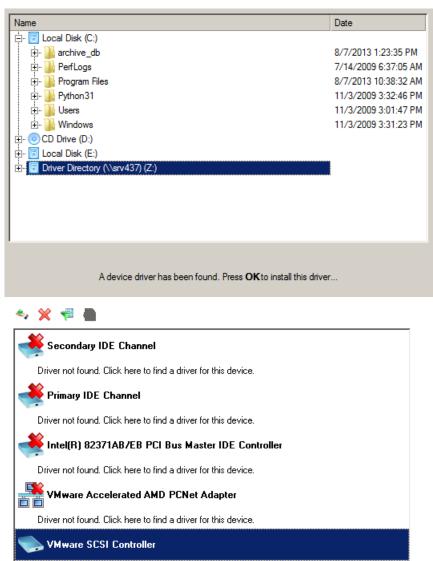
- Inject all necessary drivers... Mark the checkbox to force injection of all drivers for your devices from the given driver repository(s), even if there are already installed drivers for some hardware. Please use this option if you suspect any of the installed drivers of not matching your hardware.
- Keep the latest driver version. Mark the checkbox to keep the latest version of drivers during the forced reinjection. You can use this option only when the above option is active.
- 3. Just before the OS adjustment, you can additionally:
  - View all found hardware devices and their driver status by clicking <sup>1</sup>. The wizard names all devices according to their model description, not some alphanumeric code, which is very convenient. So you can compare the listed devices with the given hardware to make sure the wizard has analyzed your system correctly.



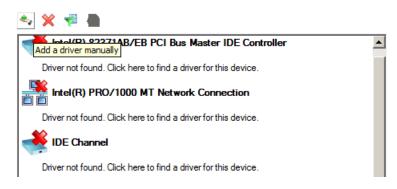
• Filter devices without drivers by clicking 🖘 . Unlike the automatic mode, where only boot critical devices (storage controllers) without drivers are being reported, here you can view and inject drivers for network cards as well.



• Add a driver for each device that lacks it by clicking on the device, then browsing for the required location. The wizard will then match the device with drivers inside the given location and pick the right one.



 Manually add a driver for a device that has not been found by our wizard by clicking \*\*, then specifying the required .INF file.



184

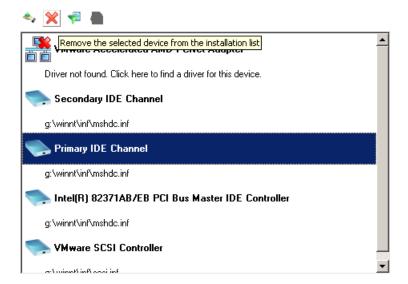
g:\winnt\inf\scsi.inf

Please select an INF file:			
Look in: 📃 Local Disk (C:) 🗾 🔯 💥 👷			
Name	Size	Date	<b>_</b>
	4.4 KB	5/15/2001 4:00:00 PM	
nettsbnt inf		5/15/2001 4:00:00 PM	
- Energy and the second		5/15/2001 4:00:00 PM	
netvt86.inf		5/15/2001 4:00:00 PM	
netw840.inf		5/15/2001 4:00:00 PM	
netw926.inf		5/15/2001 4:00:00 PM	
netw940.inf		5/15/2001 4:00:00 PM	
netwar2.inf		6/19/2003 12:05:04 PM	
netwy48.inf		5/15/2001 4:00:00 PM	
netwzc.inf		6/19/2003 12:05:04 PM	<b>-</b>
	0.7 110		
Files of type: INF files (*.inf)			•
Please select hardware the driver is designed for:			
Compex RL2000 PCI Ethernet Adapter			
Second extraction of the enternal adapter			
Windond W83C340 PCI Ethemet Adapter			
Only show hardware found on this computer			
	Calast	an INF file Cancel	1
	Select	an INF file Cancel	



When selecting an .INF file that contains several driver records for hardware you both, have in the system and don't have, you can filter the list by marking the appropriate checkbox.

• Remove a driver for a device, which has not been found in the system.



# **Extra Scenarios for WinPE**

Please use Boot Media Builder to prepare the WinPE recovery environment, which you can

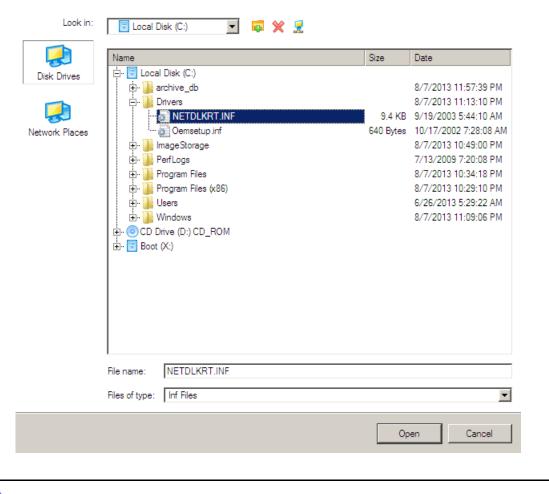
get here: <u>www.paragon-software.com/my-account/</u>.

#### **Adding specific drivers**

The WinPE based recovery environment offers excellent hardware support. Anyway you've got the option to add drivers for specific hardware with a handy dialog.

To add drivers for specific hardware, please do the following:

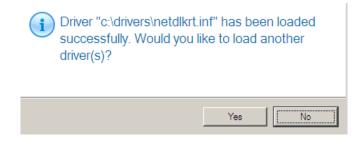
- 1. Click Load Drivers.
- In the opened dialog browse for an .INF file of the required driver package located on a floppy disk, local disk, CD/DVD or a network share. Then click the **Open** button to initiate the operation





To know how to map a network share, please consult the **<u>Configuring network</u>** scenario.

3. You will be notified on the successful accomplishment of the operation. Click **Yes** to load another driver or **No** to close the dialog.



Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.



The WinPE recovery environment can either be 32- or 64-bit, so are to be drivers for injection.

# **Configuring network**

If your local network has a DHCP server, a network connection will be automatically configured once the WinPE recovery environment has been started up. Otherwise you will need to do it manually with a handy dialog by providing an IP address, a network mask, default gateway, etc. Besides with its help you can easily map network shares.

To manually set up a network connection and map a network share, please do the following:

- 1. Click Configure Network.
- 2. In the opened dialog provide an IP address, a network mask, default gateway, etc. for your network device.

🕹 Network adapters 🖓 Network drives 🏘 Network identification 👍 Network utilities
Ethemet adapter: Intel(R) PRO/1000 MT Network Connection
IP address configuration
C Obtain an IP address automaticaly.
Renew address Release address
C Use the following IP address :
IP Address : 192.168.40 .170
Subnet Mask : 255.255.255.0
Default Gateway : 192.168.40 .2 Advanced
DNS/WINS configuration
✓ Obtain DNS server address automaticaly
DNS server : 192.168.40 .2 Advanced
✓ Obtain WINS server address automaticaly
Primary WINS server : 192.168.40.2
Secondary WINS server: 0 .0 .0 .0
Load from file Save to file OK Apply Cancel

3. Click the Network drivers tab to map a network share.

🕁 Netw	rork adapters	Retwork drives	Networ 🍄	k identification	🕹 Netwo	ork utilities
Drive	Network path					Map Network Drive
						Disconnect Drive

4. Click **Map Network Drive** and provide all the necessary information to map a network share in the opened dialog:

Remote location mapping     A network share :     Map to drive letter : Z:     Make permanent connection		
S Connect as user	ОК	Cancel

- Click the standard browse button [...] to browse for the required network share or manually enter a path to it;
- Define a letter from the pull-down list of available drive letters;
- Click the **Connect as user** button at the foot of the dialog page to specify a user name and password to access the selected network share if necessary.

By clicking **Disconnect Drive...** you can delete an existing network share if necessary.

5. Click the **Network identification** tab to change a network name of your computer (generated automatically) and a workgroup name.

🕁 Network adapte	rs 🗸 🚊 Network drives 🗸 🌺 Network identification 🗸 🔩 Network utilities
Computer Name :	MININT-DGKU9AV
Computer Name :	
Workgroup :	WORKGROUP
Primary DNS suffix :	

6. By default, the wizard saves all network settings in the netconf.ini file located on the WinPE RAM drive, thus it will only be available until you restart the computer. However, you can just once configure your network device and then save this file to some other destination, for instance a local drive, and this way avoid constant reconfiguration, just by providing a path to it. So Click **Save to file** to save the netconfig.ini file to the required destination.

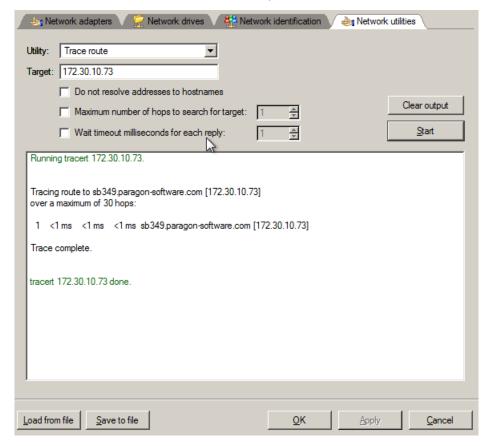
### Network troubleshooter

Network Configurator includes a traceroute/ping utility that enables to get detailed information on particular routes and measure transit delays of packets across an Internet Protocol (IP) network. So with its help you can easily track down problematic nodes.

1. If you need to ping some network host, please select **Ping**, then type in the required IP address or its name. Click **Start** when ready.

	twork adapters 🧹 🤶 Network drives 🗸	🐴 Network identification 🗸	tilities Network utilities
Utility: Target:	Ping  www.google.com	₿ N	
	Ping the specified host until stopped     Resolve addresses to hostnames     Number of echo requests to send:	<u>A</u>	Clear output Start
Pinging Reply f Reply f	g ping www.google.com. g www.google.com [173.194.71.103] with 3 rom 173.194.71.103: bytes=32 time=21ms 1 rom 173.194.71.103: bytes=32 time=20ms 1 rom 173.194.71.103: bytes=32 time=18ms 1	TTL=128 TTL=128	
Ping st Pac Approx	rom 173.194.71.103: bytes=32 time=24ms 1 atistics for 173.194.71.103: kets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% f imate round trip times in milli-seconds: num = 18ms, Maximum = 24ms, Average = 2	oss),	
ping w	ww.google.com done.		

- Ping the specified host until stopped. Mark the option to ping the chosen host for indefinite time;
- **Resolve addresses to hostnames**. Mark the option to display hostnames instead of IP addresses.
- Number of echo requests to send. By default the utility sends 4 echo requests, which you can modify however.
- 2. If you need to trace a route to some network host, please select **Trace route**, then type in the required IP address or its name. Click **Start** when ready.



Copyright© 1994-2014 Paragon Software GmbH. All rights reserved.

- 190
- Do not resolve addresses to hostnames. Mark the option to display IP addresses instead of hostnames.
- **Maximum number of hops to search for target**. By default the utility goes through maximum 30 hops when searching for the target host, which you can modify however.
- Wait timeout milliseconds for each reply. By default the utility waits 4 seconds for each echo reply message. If not received within the timeout, an asterisk (\*) is displayed.

## **Saving log files**

The program enables to simplify the procedure of sending support requests to the Paragon Support Team. In case of having difficulties with handling the program, you, with the help of this very function, can address the company support engineers and provide them with all the information they need such as the disk layout, performed operations, etc. in order to tackle the encountered problem. Information of that kind is stored in log files.

To prepare a log files package, please do the following:

- 1. Click Log Saver.
- Provide an e-mail address used for registering the product, then give a detailed description on the encountered problem in the corresponding text fields. Please don't worry - we respect your privacy, so none of your confidential data will be exposed. This utility only collects the program's operation logs to help our Support Team find and tackle your problem. Click **Next** to continue.

### Welcome to Log Saver Wizard

Please enter e-mail address which was used while registering this product. With its help Paragon Support Department will be able to associate your log files with your request through <u>on-line request</u> <u>system</u> .
TEST_USER@gmail.com
Please enter description of encountered issue:

0

# Log files do not contain any confidential information on the operating system settings or the user documents.

3. Browse for the required location of the log files package or manually provide a full path to it. Click **Save** to initiate the operation.

# Specify folder and file name for ZIP archive

Name			Size	Date	
🖶 📴 Loca	l Disk (C:)				
	Drive (D:)				
	Volume (E:)				
🗄 📴 NEW	VOLUME (F:)				
ile name:	TEST_USER[gmail.c	om]_2013-08-06,	_23-24.zip		
le name: les of type:	TEST_USER[gmail.c	om]_2013-08-06_	_23-24.zip		

i

This function is also available under Windows.

# How to Work with Bitlocked Volumes

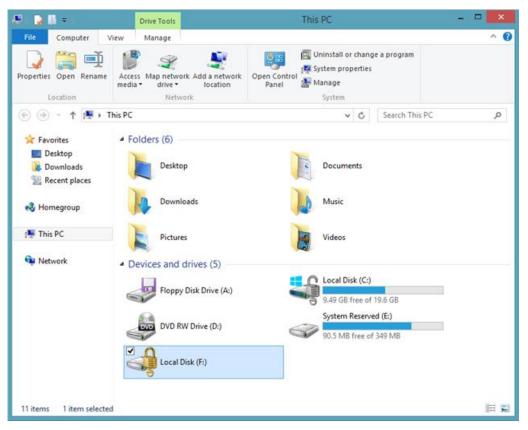
Our product allows you to <u>accomplish a number of operations</u> on volumes encrypted by Windows BitLocker, but only when they are unlocked. Until that locked volumes will be recognized in the program's interface as 'Not formatted'. You can unlock this type of volumes only through Windows-native facilities:

- Graphical user interface for Windows,
- manage-bde command line tool for Windows and the WinPE recovery media.

Let's see how to unlock a volume encrypted by BitLocker in Windows and the WinPE recovery media.

### **In Windows**

1. Initially we've got a bitlocked data volume **F**:, displayed as a volume under lock in Windows Explorer.



If going to the main launcher of our program right now (**Open Advanced Interface**), this very volume will be detected as 'Not formatted', thus no backup, restore, or copy operation will be available for it.

System Reserved (E:)		Local Disk (C:)	
350 MB NTFS		19.6 GB NTFS	
c MBR Hard Disk 1 (VM			
C MDITTIGIC DISK I (*M	ware, VMware Virtu	al S SCSI Disk Dev)	
Local Disk (F:)	ware, vmware virtu	al S SCSI Disk Dev)	
	ware, vmware virtu		
Local Disk (F:)	Total size: 19.5 GB	(Unallocated)	
Local Disk (F:)		(Unallocated)	

2. To unlock it, please right click of the mouse on the corresponding volume in Windows Explorer, then select **Unlock Volume...** or use the corresponding option of the main launcher (**Partition > Unlock Volume**).



There are other ways to unlock a volume encrypted by BitLocker. For more information, please consult documentation provided by Microsoft.

3. Enter an unlock password.

192

BitLocker (F:)	
Enter password to unlock this drive.	
•••••	<u>م</u>
More options	

4. As a result, the volume should be unlocked.

<ul> <li>Devices and drives (5)</li> </ul>	
Floppy Disk Drive (A:)	9.49 GB free of 19.6 GB
DVD RW Drive (D:)	System Reserved (E:) 90.5 MB free of 349 MB
DATA (F:) 19.4 GB free of 19.5 GB	

If going to the main launcher of our program right now (**Open Advanced Interface**), the volume will be correctly detected and become available for operation.

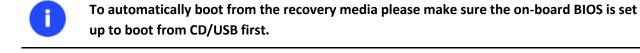
System Reserved (E:) 350 MB NTFS	Local Disk (C:) 19.6 GB NTFS	
Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VM	Aware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	

0

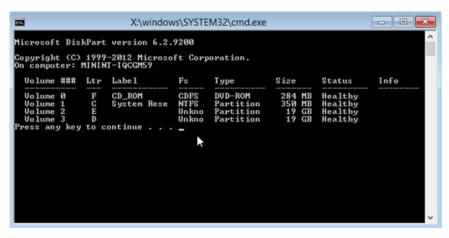
The same action can also be accomplished through the 'manage-bde' command line tool. For more information, please consult the next scenario.

## **In WinPE**

1. Start up the computer from the WinPE recovery media.



- 2. Go to the Security and BitLocker Encryption section, then select List of Volumes.
- 3. Define volumes encrypted by BitLocker (will be detected as 'Unknown'). If having several bitlocked volumes (just our case), you can pinpoint the required volume by its size.



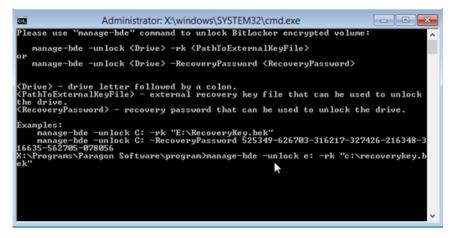
If going to the main launcher of our program right now (**Open Advanced Interface**), you can see all unknown volumes detected as 'Not formatted', just like it was under Windows.

System Reserved (C:)	Local Disk (E:)	
350 MB NTFS	19.6 GB Not formatted	
sic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, 1	VMware Virtual S SCSI Disk Dev)	
Local Disk (D:) 19.5 GB Not formatted	(Unallocated)	



Drive letters in Windows and WinPE may differ, so please do not use them as identifiers.

- 4. Close the dialog, then select **Unlock Encrypted Volumes**.
- 5. Use provided examples and grammar to unlock the required volume. If you'd like to see all commands of the **manage-bde** tool, please run it with the '-help' parameter (**manage-bde** -help).

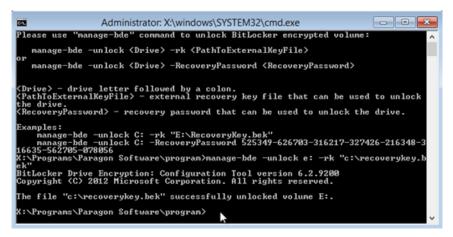


As you can see on the screenshot above, we're attempting to unlock volume **E**: by providing a path to the corresponding recovery key (**recoverykey.bek**), which is placed on System Reserved (volume **C**:).



The same dialog can also be called from the main launcher (right click of the mouse on the required volume, then select 'Unlock Volume').

6. As a result, the volume should be unlocked.



If going to the main launcher of our program now (**Open Advanced Interface**), the volume will be correctly detected and become available for operation.

350 MB NTFS	19.6 GB NTFS		
Basic MBR Hard Disk 1 (VMware, VMware Virtual S		ze: 19.6 GB	

# Troubleshooter

Here you can find answers to the most frequently asked questions that might arise while using the program.

1. I try to run an operation, but the program claims my partition is in use and suggests restarting the computer.

There are a number of operations that cannot be performed while your partition is in use (or locked in other words). Please agree to reboot your machine to make the program accomplish the operation in a special bootup mode.

2. I run an operation and restart the machine as required, but it just boots back into Windows without accomplishing the operation.

Please run 'chkdsk /f' for the partition in question.

3. I cannot create a new partition on the disk.

There can be a number of reasons for that:

- The program cannot create a new partition on a dynamic disk.
- The program allows creating new partitions only within blocks of un-partitioned space. It cannot convert
  a free space on an existing partition to a new partition.
- 4. I cannot copy a partition.

There can be a number of reasons for that:

- The source or target disk you select is a dynamic disk;
- 4 primary partitions (or three primary partitions and an extended one) already exist on the target disk.
- 5. I need to copy a partition. But when selecting a place where to make a copy, I always get a crossed circle sign no matter which partition is selected.

The program enables to copy a partition only to a block of un-partitioned space. If you don't have a block of free space on your hard disk, please delete or reduce an existing partition to accomplish the operation.

6. I cannot do anything with my USB flash drive. I get a crossed circle sign when trying to select any area on it.

Some USB flash drives don't have the MBR (Master Boot Record), that's the cause of your problem. To fix the issue please use the Update MBR function of our program or 'fixmbr' of the Windows installation disc to write a standard code to your flash drive.

7. When trying to back up my system the program asks to restart the computer.

Most likely the Hot Processing mode is disabled. Please make it active in the program settings.

8. When backing up a partition with the VSS (Volume Shadow Copy Service) mode, the program throws "VSS could not be started for processed volume".

Most likely you try to back up a FAT32 partition, which is not supported by VSS. Please use the Paragon Hot Processing mode instead.

9. I cannot back up my hard disk to an external hard drive. Once started, the operation is aborted with the following error: Hard Disk management, Error Code 0x1100a. What is wrong here?

The problem is that the Microsoft VSS service is set as the default Hot Processing mode in the program. But this service has not been started in your WindowsXP/Windows2003/Vista. Please start this service (right click on My Computer > Manage > Services > find Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service and make it active. Set also to start it automatically).

10. When running a backup operation with the Paragon Hot Processing mode enabled, I get an error: error code 0x1200e "Internal error during Hot Backup"

Most likely your hard disk contains bad blocks. Please fix the issue with your HDD manufacturer's tool.

You can find a name of the tool you need here: http://kb.paragon-software.com

11. When running a backup operation with the Microsoft VSS mode enabled, I get the following error: error code 0x12016 "VSS: can't read volume data"

Most likely your hard disk contains bad blocks. Please fix the issue with your HDD manufacturer's tool.

You can find a name of the tool you need here: http://kb.paragon-software.com

- 12. When trying to back up to a network share, I get the following error: "i/o error" or "can't open/create file" Please check whether you've got a permission to write to the selected destination or not.
- 13. When trying to restore a backup archive, I get the following error: "Can't restore to current selection" or "Archive does not fit"

Most likely you're trying to restore a backup of the whole hard disk to a partition or vice versa.

14. I set up a timetable for a task, but it fails to execute.

There can be a number of reasons for that:

- Windows Task Scheduler does not work properly. Check whether it is so or not by scheduling a simple task (call Notepad through scheduling);

- You don't have permission to write to the selected backup destination.

# Glossary

Active Partition is a partition from which an x86-based computer starts up. The active partition must be a primary partition on a basic disk. If you use Windows exclusively, the active partition can be the same as the system volume. In the DOS partitioning scheme, only primary partitions can be active due to limitations of the standard bootstrap.

The term **backup** originates from the time when the best way to protect valuable information was to store it in form of archives on external media. It's become now a general notion to mean making duplications of data for protection purposes.

**Bootable Archive** is created by adding a special bootable section when backing up the data to CD/DVDs. Thus you will be able to restore the data from these archives without having to run the program, but by simply booting from these CD/DVDs.

**Cluster** is the smallest amount of disk space that can be allocated to hold a file. All file systems used by Windows organize hard disks based on clusters, which consist of one or more contiguous sectors. The smaller the cluster size, the more efficiently a disk stores information. If no cluster size is specified during formatting, Windows picks defaults based on the size of the volume. These defaults are selected to reduce the amount of space that is lost and the amount of fragmentation on the volume. A cluster is also called an allocation unit.

**Extended Partition** is a partition type you create only on a basic MBR (Master Boot Record) disk. Extended partition is used if you want to create more than four volumes on a disk, since it may contain multiple logical drives.

**File System Metadata**. The servicing structures of a file system, which contain information about allocating files and directories, security information etc, are named the file system metadata. It is invisible for users and regular applications because its accidental modification usually makes a partition unusable.

**Hard Disk Geometry**. Traditionally, the usable space of a hard disk is logically divided into cylinders, cylinders are divided into tracks (or heads), and tracks are divided into sectors.

The triad of values {[Sectors-per-Track], [Tracks-per-Cylinder], [Amount-of-Cylinders]} is usually named the Hard Disk Geometry or C/H/S geometry.

Tracks and cylinders are enumerated from "0", while sectors are enumerated from "1". These disk parameters play an essential role in the DOS Partitioning scheme.

Modern hardware uses an advanced scheme for the linear addressing of sectors, which assumes that all on-disk sectors are continuously enumerated from "0". To allow backward compatibility with older standards, modern hard disks can additionally emulate the C/H/S geometry.

**Hidden Partition**. The concept of a "hidden" partition was introduced in the IBM OS/2 Boot Manager. By default, an operating system does not mount a hidden partition, thus preventing access to its contents.

A method of hiding a partition consists in changing the partition ID value saved in the Partition Table. This is achieved by XOR-ing the partition ID with a 0x10 hexadecimal value.

**Master File Table** (MFT) is a relational database that consists of rows of file records and columns of file attributes. It contains at least one entry for every file on an NTFS volume, including the MFT itself. MFT is similar to a FAT table in a FAT file system.

**MBR & 1st track of the hard disk** is the 0th sector of the disk. MBR (Master Boot Record) contains important information about the disk layout:

- The used partitioning scheme;
- The starting records of the Partition Table;
- The standard bootstrap code (or the initial code of boot managers, disk overlay software or boot viruses).

Generally, the 0th sector is used for similar purposes in all existing partitioning schemes.

The MBR capacity is not sufficient to contain sophisticated boot programs. That's why the on-boot software is allowed to use the entire 0th track of the disk. For example, boot managing utilities such as LILO, GRUB and Paragon Boot Manager are located in the 0th track.

**Partition ID** (or File system ID) is a file system identifier that is placed in the partition. It is used to quickly detect partitions of supported types. A number of operating systems completely rely on it to distinguish supported partitions.

Partition ID is saved in appropriate entries of the Partition Table and takes only 1 byte of space.

**Partition Label** (or Volume Label) is a small textual field (up to 11 characters) that is located in the partition's boot sector. This value is used for notification purposes only. It is detectable by any partitioning tool including the DOS FDISK utility.

Modern operating systems save it within a file system, e.g. as a special hidden file. Thus it is able to contain a relatively large amount of text in multiple languages.

**Partitioning Scheme** is a set of rules, constraints and format of the on-disk structures to keep information on partitions located on a hard disk.

There are known several partitioning schemes. The most popular of them is the so-called DOS partitioning scheme. It was introduced by IBM and Microsoft to use multiple partitions in the disk subsystems on IBM PC compatible computers.

Another popular partitioning scheme is the so-called Logical Disks Model (LDM) that originates from the UNIX mainframe systems. Veritas Executive accommodates a simplified version of LDM to the Windows 2000 operating system.

Windows 2000 and XP support two quite different partitioning schemes: the old DOS partitioning scheme and the new Dynamic Disk Management (DDM). The problem is that earlier versions of Windows do not support DDM. In addition, most hard disk utilities do not support it as well.

**Recovery Media** is a CD/DVD disc, a USB flash card or even a floppy disk from which you can boot for maintenance or recovery purposes.

**Root Directory** is the top-level directory of a formatted logical drive to include other files and directories. In modern file systems (Ext2/Ext3, NTFS and even FAT32) it does not differ from other directories. This is not the case for old FAT12 and FAT16 file systems.

**Serial Number**. In the DOS partitioning scheme, every hard disk and every partition has a 32-bit serial number represented by an 8-figure hexadecimal value. It is stored in the MBR and its value is assigned when the MBR sector is initialized by Microsoft standard disk managing tools, such as Windows Disk Administrator and the FDISK utility.

In fact, a hard disk's serial number is not important for most operating systems and software. It is known that Windows NT, 2000 and XP store its value in the database of assigned drive letters.

A partition's serial number is stored in its boot sector (in FAT16, FAT32 and NFTS file systems). Its value is assigned when the partition is formatted. It does not play an important role for most operating systems and software as well.